Uncontrolled When Printed

Contents

What's New March 2013

News Bulletin
Summary of Main Changes
Table of Changes

Useful Information March 2013

Amendments to Current Documents March 2013

Document Titles and Descriptions March 2013

Control Command and Signalling
Plant
Rolling Stock
Infrastructure
Traffic Operation and Management
Energy

Related Documents March 2013

Index of Standards March 2013

Index of Subjects March 2013

Members Lists March 2013

Industry Standards Coordination Committee
Standards Committees

Forms March 2013

What’s New

Welcome to the March 2013 edition of the Railway Group Standards (RGS) catalogue.

The following can be found within this section:

- News Bulletin
- Summary of main changes
- Changes from catalogue December 2012

NEWS BULLETIN

This issue sees the following changes:

- One up-issued Railway Group Standards Code (the Code)
- One up-issued Standards Manual (the Manual)
- Three new Standards
- Two up-issued Standards
- Six withdrawn Standards
- One new Guidance Note
- Two up-issued Guidance Notes
- Three withdrawn Guidance Notes
- Three new Rail Industry Standards
- One up-issued Rail Industry Standard
- One withdrawn Rail Industry Standard
- Six up-issued Rule Book documents
- Eight up-issued Pink Pages (GORT3053) documents
- One new White Pages (GORT3056) document
- Nine up-issued White Pages (GORT3056) documents
- Four withdrawn White Pages (GORT3056) documents
- One new Good Practice Guide
- Five withdrawn Good Practice Guides
- Three new ATOC Guidance Notes
- One withdrawn ATOC Code of Practice
- Three withdrawn ATOC Good Practice Guides
- One withdrawn T&RS Systems Management Group Code of Practice
- Two new Amendments

Details can be found in the summary and table of changes.

If you have any comments regarding the content, style or layout of the RGS Catalogue or the RGSonline website please contact RSSB Enquiry Desk on 020 3142 5400 or enquirydesk@rssb.co.uk.
Hardcopies of the RGS Catalogue and Railway Group Standards can be purchased from Willsons Printers (01636702334).

Summary of main changes – March 2013

RGSC01 Railway Group Standards Code (New Issue)
The revised Railway Group Standards Code (the Code) issue four allows for a single, flexible Railway Group Standards (RGSs) change process, a single type of deviation from RGSs and a restatement of the scope of RGSs as national rules. The processes in the Code have been opened to anyone who must comply with RGSs. The RSSB Board intervention procedure has been removed and will be published separately. There is also a reduction in detail about RSSB's activities in administrating the processes in the Code.

RGSC02 Standards Manual (New Issue)
The revised Standards Manual (the Manual) issue three allows for a single, flexible Railway Group Standards (RGSs) change process, a single type of deviation from RGSs together with a single process for approving deviations and restatement of the scope of RGSs as national rules. The processes in the Manual have been opened to anyone who must comply with RGSs. One class of standard (Rail Industry Approved Codes of Practice (RACOPs)) has been eliminated. There is simplification of requirement relating to management of committees and a reduction in detail about RSSB's activities in administrating the processes set out in the Manual.

TDRAD054 Procedures for the Use of Band 112 / NRN Base Stations for Engineering / Emergency Work (Withdrawal)
Requirements in TDRAD054 issue one have been identified to be out of scope of Railway Group Standards in accordance with the requirements of the Railway Group Standards Code issue three (the Code). The standard is therefore to be withdrawn in its entirety. There are no changes to the requirements which remain the responsibility of Network Rail.

GKRT0094 Train Voice Radio Systems (New)
The new and amended requirements in GKRT0094 will facilitate the implementation of the Global System for Mobile Communications – Railway (GSM-R) train voice radio system which is to supersede other radio systems in Great Britain.
This document supersedes GERT8080 Iss 1, GERT8081 Iss 1 and GERT8082 Iss 1**.**

RS100 Good Practice Guide on Competence Development (New)
This document collates content from the previous five RSSB Good Practice Guides in the area of workforce development (RS220, RS221, RS501, RS701 and RS702) replacing the original documents. In addition, it also includes the evidence-based findings of recent research projects focusing on competence development, details of technology or other relevant mediums that support the implementation of innovative concepts, a variety of small and more in-depth case studies as well as links and signposts to practical tools and further information.

GKRT0186 Safety Requirements of Signal Post Telephone Systems (Withdrawal)
This document is withdrawn as the requirements contained within the document are out of scope of the Railway Group Standards Code, due to them being single duty holder responsibility or duplicated in other RGS.

GKGN0694 Guidance on Train Voice Radio Systems (New)
This document provides rationale and guidance to support the train voice radio requirements in GKRT0094 for Great Britain (GB) rail network. This document also supersedes GEGN8580 Iss 1 and GEGN8582 Iss 1.

RIS-0794-CCS Rail Industry Standard for GSM-R Train Voice Radio (New)
This document supersedes RIS-3082-CCS and incorporates related single duty holder requirements withdrawn from GERT8080, GERT8081 and GERT8082.

BR1609 VHF Band III Radio for the National Radio Network Incorporating the Train Overlay System (New)
The National Radio Network (NRN) and Cab Secure Radio (CSR) systems are intended to be superseded by the Global System for Mobile Communication-Radio (GSM-R) train voice radio system and there is no intention to install them on any other routes or to make changes to their existing status, the Control Command and Signalling Standards Committee (CCS SC) and the Industry Standards Coordination Committee (ISCC) agreed that the specifications for these radio systems, presented in BR1609, BR1661 and BR1854, would not be filtered in line with the 'Strategy for Standards Management' and reworked into the new train voice radio RGS GKRT0094. Instead, these document are included in rgsonline.co.uk for future reference.
This document was issued in August 1987.

BR1661 Train to Signalbox Radio System (Train Radio) (New)
The NRN and CSR systems are intended to be superseded by the GSM-R train voice radio system and there is no intention to install them on any other routes or to make changes to their existing status, the CCS SC and the Industry Standards Coordination Committee (ISCC) agreed that the specifications for these radio systems, presented in BR1609, BR1661 and BR1854, would not be filtered in line with the 'Strategy for Standards Management' and reworked into the new train voice radio RGS GKRT0094. Instead, these document are included in rgsonline.co.uk for future reference.
This document was issued in March 1990.

RIS-2706-RST Rail Industry Standard for Recording of Rolling Stock Data (New)
This document provides a standard on rolling stock shared data and sets out both the minimum mandated and non-mandated rolling stock data that should be accessible to the rail industry members, irrespective of which information technology (IT) system is in use. It is derived from existing information in ATOC Code of Practice, ACOPEC01002: Approved Code of Practice – Maintenance Systems Shared Data and T&RS Systems Management Group Code of Practice, SMG012: Code of Practice defining Traction and Rolling Stock Shared Data.

RIS-2773-RST Format for Vehicle Gauging Data (New)
This document provides a standard format for defining the gauge of a vehicle for the purposes of compatibility assessment when undertaking absolute gauging. It can also be used for the purposes of assessment against standard dynamic vehicle gauges. A standard blank electronic spreadsheet (provided in Microsoft Excel) is available at:
http://www.rssb.co.uk/groups/SIC/Documents/VGD_spreadsheet.xlsx.

GORT3053 Working Manual for Rail Staff Handling and Carriage of Dangerous Goods – Contents and Glossary (New Issue)
This document was previously published as GORM3053 and is now renumbered to GORT3053.

GORT3053-1 Working Manual for Rail Staff Handling and Carriage of Dangerous Goods – Appendix 1 – List of Dangerous Goods with their United Nations Number, Dangerous Goods Class and TOPS Commodity Code (New Issue)
This document has been amended to permit the movement of toxic gases not in bulk on driver only operated trains. This section is carried forwards as Appendix 1, with a revised document reference of GORT3053-1.

GORT3053-2 Working Manual for Rail Staff Handling and Carriage of Dangerous Goods – Appendix 2 – Bulk Traffic Dangerous Goods, Wagon and Container Separation Distance Requirements / Prohibitions (New Issue)
This document has been amended to permit the movement of toxic gases not in bulk on driver only operated trains. This section is carried forward as Appendix 2, with a revised document reference of GORT3053-2.

GORT3053-A Working Manual for Rail Staff Handling and Carriage of Dangerous Goods – Classification, Acceptance and Identification (New Issue)
This section has been updated to align with the International Carriage of Dangerous Goods by Rail (RID). In addition, the Dangerous Goods Working Group (DGWG) established that it would be beneficial to make some minor changes to this section, specifically A3.1 relating to the use of the dummy UN number 8989 should be used, but is intended to improve the clarity of the instruction.

GORT3053-B Working Manual for Rail Staff Handling and Carriage of Dangerous Goods – Hazard and Carriage of Dangerous Goods – Hazard Identification (New Issue)
This section has been updated to align with the International Carriage of Dangerous Goods by Rail (RID).

GORT3053-C Working Manual for Rail Staff Handling and Carriage of Dangerous Goods – Marshalling, Movement and Loading (New Issue)
This document has been amended to permit the movement of toxic gases not in bulk on driver only operated trains.

GORT3053-F Working Manual for Rail Staff Handling and Carriage of Dangerous Goods – Fires and Incidents Involving Dangerous Goods (New Issue)
This document has been amended to permit the movement of toxic gases not in bulk on driver only operated trains.

GORT3053-PPBL Pink pages Briefing leaflet (New Issue)
The Pink pages Briefing leaflet contains details on the changes made to the working manual for rail staff handling and carriage of dangerous goods in June 2013. The document reference has also been change from GERT8000-PPBL to GORT3053-PPBL.

GORT3056 Working Manual for Rail Staff Freight Train Operations – Contents and Glossary (New Issue)
This document was previously published as GORM3056 and is now renumbered to GORT3056.

GORT3056-1 Working Manual for Rail Staff Freight Train Operations – Appendix 1 – Conversion Chart SLUs – Metres – Feet (New Issue)
This section is carried forwards as Appendix 1, with a revised document reference of GORT3056-1.

GORT3056-2 Working Manual for Rail Staff Freight Train Operations – Appendix 2 – Exceptional Load Code Words (New Issue)
This is carried forward as Appendix 2, with the addition of code words relating to out-of-gauge loads and a revised document reference of GORT3056-2.

GORT3056-3 Working Manual for Rail Staff Freight Train Operations – Appendix 3 – Exceptional Load RT3973 Forms (New)
This is a new appendix, showing examples of the various Exceptional Load RT3973 forms.

GORT3056-A Working Manual for Rail Staff Freight Train Operations – Introduction and Classification of Freight Trains (Withdrawal)
This section is withdrawn. Some of the contents is covered by GERT8000 (the Rule Book), with the remainder now within Section B.

GORT3056-B Working Manual for Rail Staff Freight Train Operations – Marshalling and Composition of Freight Trains (New Issue)
The requirement for the automatic brake to be operative on the last three vehicles of every freight train is revised to the brake requiring to be operative on the last vehicle only. Additionally, the brake force on that vehicle must not be less than the brake force required (as shown in Table E1) for a train of the weight equivalent to the one fitted vehicle and any piped-only vehicles marshalled immediately ahead of it.

GORT3056-C Working Manual for Rail Staff Freight Train Operations – Principles of Safe Freight Train Operation (New Issue)
With the re-issue of the White Pages, the engineering supervisor (ES) will no longer be required to sign or retain a copy of the completed certificate to indicate that the wagons are fit to travel. However, the ES will still be required to sign the certificate if on-track machines are to conveyed from site in a freight train to indicate that they are fit to travel.

GORT3056-D Working Manual for Rail Staff Freight Train Operations – Defective Vehicles (New Issue)
Some of the contents of this section are covered by GORT3053 Working Manual for Rail Staff, Handling and Carriage of Dangerous Goods, with the remainder in this section. Defective vehicle labels are now mandated in GORT3436 Information for Safe Train Operation.

GORT3056-E Working Manual for Rail Staff Freight Train Operations – Movement of Freight Trains (New Issue)
The working instructions for Merry-go-Round (MGR) trains in section E7 are withdrawn along with Table E2, Loads permitted for train loads of HMA and HNA wagons, as they no longer operate on the GB main line railway. Forms RT3973xxx are now within the new GORT3056-3 (Appendix 3).

GORT3056-F Working Manual for Rail Staff Freight Train Operations – Incidents (Withdrawal)
This section is withdrawn. These requirements are mandated in the Rule Book module G1 for general regulations and the Pink pages for transport undertakings who convey dangerous or hazardous goods.

GORT3056-G Working Manual for Rail Staff Freight Train Operations – Safe Loading of Freight (Withdrawal)
This section with withdrawn. The content have been incorporated into GOGN3653 Guidance for Safe Freight Train Operation. The Freight Operator community prefer to use guidance material as a basis for company instructions relevant to their own range of traffic.

GORT3056-H Working Manual for Rail Staff Freight Train Operations – International Traffic (Withdrawal)
This section is withdrawn. The contents are no longer current following the International Wagon Regulations (Regolamento Internzionale Veicoli – RIV) being superseded in 2006.

GORT3056-J Working Manual for Rail Staff Freight Train Operations – Intermodal Traffic (New Issue)
This section is retained, except for J8 which is a matter for individual companies instructions.

GORT3056-K Working Manual for Rail Staff Freight Train Operations – Vehicles Requiring Special Conditions of Travel (New Issue)
Table K3 (Lines of Route not Meeting the Network Rail Standard W6A (W6) Loading Gauge) and Section K3.4 (which set out a number of routes over which the normal permitted width of any load below 1050 mm above rail level does not apply) have been withdrawn. The content of these tables are matters for publication in the Sectional Appendix.

GORT3436 Information for Safe Train Operation (Small Scale Change)
This document replaces issue two as a small scale change. Amendments are limited to amending references, removing references to UN code 000 and transferring defective vehicle labels, previously referred in the White Pages, into GORT3436.

GOGN3676 Guidance on the Carriage of Dangerous Goods by Rail (New Issue)
This document has been amended under the Railway Group Standards Code (Issue Three) as a small scale change. Reference to the amendments has been made in the 'Issue record' of the document and are marked by black lining. All other parts of the document are unchanged from the previous issue.
Amendments are limited to dates, references, definitions and minor text corrections.

GOGN3653 Guidance for Safe Freight Train Operation (New Issue)
This document has been amended as a consequence of changes made to GORM3056 Working Manual for Rail Staff – Freight Train Operations (White Pages). The contents of Section G – Safe Loading of Freight – have been transferred into GOGN3653, with resultant changes to the numbering and order of clauses. Some clauses have been reworded to improve their clarity.
Changes made to GERT8000 Rule Book module TW1 with regard to the requirement for the brakes to be operative on the rear vehicle, previously the rear three vehicles, are reflected in this guidance note.

RIS-3703-TOM Rail Industry Standard for Passenger Train Dispatch and Platform Safety Measures (New Issue)
This document was re-issued following recent developments, namely: changes made to GERT8000 Rule Book module SS1 (Station duties and train dispatch). Operations Focus Group (OFG) sponsored work carried out by RSSB to review station safety and as a result the 12 month review of the referred RIS.

GERT8000-AM AM Amendments module (New Issue)
This module will contain those amendments previously published in the Periodical Operating Notice. It will also contain amendments published for the first time and amendments that do not justify reissue of the module concerned.

GERT8000-Index Rule Book Index and Glossary (New Issue)
The Index and Glossary is updated on a six monthly basis to align with any Rule Book (GERT8000) changes within that period.

GERT8000-Issue Rule Book module issue history (New Issue)
The module issue history is updated on a six monthly basis to align with any Rule Book (GERT8000) changes within that period.

GERT8000-RBBL Rule Book briefing leaflet (New Issue)
The Rule Book briefing leaflet contains details on the changes made to the Rule Book (GERT8000) that come into force in June 2013. This issue sees changes to modules SS1 and SS2.

GERT8000-SS1 Station duties and train dispatch (New Issue)
As part of Tranche 10 of the New Approach to the Rule Book project, module SS1 has been reviewed and updated following the application of the New Approach Strategy.

GERT8000-SS2 Shunting (New Issue)
As part of Tranche 10 of the New Approach to the rule book project, module SS2 has been reviewed and updated following the application of the New Approach Strategy.

GERT8001 Changes to National Operations Publications for March 2013 (New Issue)
This document is primarily used to publish minor changes to National Operations Publications.

GERT8021 Facilities for Emergency Voice Communication with Control Rooms (Withdrawal)
This document is withdrawn as the requirements contained within the document are out of scope of the Railway Group Standards Code, due to them being single duty holder responsibility or duplicated in other RGS.

GEGN8521 Guidance on Providing Facilities for Emergency Voice Communications with Control Rooms (Withdrawal)
The RGS that this guidance note provides guidance for is being withdrawn due to it being out of scope of the Railway Group Standard, therefore this guidance is no longer required.

ATOCGN013 ATOC Guidance Note – Control of Risk Posed by the Presence of Legionella Bacteria in On-train Non-potable Water Systems (New)
New ATOC Guidance Note intended to assist TOCs in assessing and mitigating the risk posed by the presence of legionella bacteria in on-train non-potable water systems. The content draws on the outputs from the RSSB T985 research project on the same subject. The document notes that there is no known evidence from the UK or elsewhere that anyone has ever contracted Legionnaires' disease (the form of pneumonia caused by the legionella bacterium) from travelling on a train. However, routine sampling and testing of vehicle toilet water tanks undertaken in early 2011 identified the presence of significant concentrations of legionella bacteria and the RSSB research project and this Guidance Note are responses to this.

ATOCGN014 ATOC Guidance Note – Major Incidents – Preparation of Aide-Memoires for Senior Managers (New)
New ATOC Guidance Note concerning preparation of aide-memoires and other prompts for Managing Directors and on-call Senior Directors in the event of major incidents, particularly during the initial response phase. These can provide a vital tool to those taking the lead roles in responding to such incidents affecting their TOC which will inevitably find themselves very quickly under unprecedented pressure from many different quarters and who will hence benefit from a reminder aimed at ensuring that key issues are not overlooked. The document is not aimed at senior managers themselves but at those responsible for producing such reminders.

ATOCGN015 ATOC Guidance Note – Extreme Weather Arrangements including Failure or Non-Availability of On-train Environment Control Systems (New)
New ATOC Guidance Note intended to assist TOCs in minimising the impact of extreme weather conditions on passengers and staff including specifically when on-train environment control systems are non-operational. It incorporates material previously provided in separate ATOC Good Practice Guides on hot weather arrangements, failure / non-availability of air-conditioning and stranded trains (all of which it replaces) but its scope has been widened to include all extreme weather in general rather than exclusively hot weather. It is intended to complement the existing ATOC / Network Rail Guidance Note on Meeting the Needs of Passengers when Trains are Stranded.
This document supersedes ATOCGPG003 Iss 1, ATOCGPG004 Iss 2 and ATOCGPG017 Iss 1.

On-going changes from previous issues

GKRT0045 Lineside Signals, Indicators and Layout of Signals (Small Scale Change)
Small scale change amendment to clause 2.3.2.5c) to allow the use of the 'X' alphanumeric route indicator to additionally denote a movement along a bi-directional line in the opposite direction to the normal flow of traffic.

GKGN0645 Guidance on Lineside Signals, Indicators and Layout of Signals (Small Scale Change)
Small scale change amendment to GKRT0045 issue three, clause 2.3.2.5c), to allow the use of the 'X' alphanumeric route indicator to additionally denote a movement along a bi-directional line in the opposite direction to the normal flow of traffic.
Guidance GN167 has been revised, and GN168 newly added, to take into account the revision of the clause in GKRT0045 issue three.

GKRT0192 Level Crossing Interface Requirements (Small Scale Change)
Small scale change to amend clause 4.1.1.1, to provide clarification to the compliance requirements of this document.

GKGN0692 Guidance on Level Crossing Interface Requirements (Small Scale Change)
Small scale change. Amended to provide additional guidance on the amended text in GKRT0192, clause 4.1.1.1 – compliance requirements.

GORT3119 Accident and Incident Investigation (New Issue)
The purpose of the revision to GORT3119 is to address the revised definition of what does and what does not constitute a SPAD event within the Railways and Other Guided Transport Systems (Safety) Regulations (2006) – as amended in 2011 and to address proposal 11/017 (to review ERTMS incidents). The new ROGS definition means that incidents that would have previously been investigated specifically as SPAD Categories B, C and D, no longer require that labelling. With only one meaning of a SPAD (as defined in law), this means that what were Category B, C and D events will continue to be investigated as 'operating incidents' (with the same decision criteria as at present) – but without having to be defined as SPADs at the outset.

GOGN3519 Guidance on Accident and Incident Investigation (New Issue)
The purpose of the revision to GOGN3519 is to address the revised definition of what does and what does not constitute a SPAD event within the Railways and Other Guided Transport Systems (Safety) Regulations (2006) – as amended in 2011 and to address proposals 11/017 (to review ERTMS incidents) and 11/020 (to review the reporting of local and formal investigations to RSSB). The new ROGS definition means that incidents that would have previously been investigated specifically as SPAD Categories B, C and D, no longer require that labelling. This only one meaning of a SPAD (as defined in law), this means that what were Category B, C and D events will continue to be investigated as 'operating incidents' (with the same decision criteria as at present) – but without having to be defined as SPADs at the outset.

Form GORT3119-A Provisional SPAD Data Collection Form GORT3119-A (Infrastructure Manager) (New Issue)
The purpose of the revision to the RT3119 forms was to align them with the new issue of GORT3119 and GOGN3519 as a result of the definition of a SPAD within the Railways and Other Guided Transport Systems (Safety) Regulations (2006) – as amended in 2011, and also to address proposal 11/017 (received from industry, to cater for ERTMS incidents). The new ROGS definition means that incidents that would have previously been designated as SPAD Categories B, C and D, no longer require that labelling. With only one meaning of a SPAD (as defined in law), this means that what were Category B, C and D events will continue to be treated as 'operating incidents' (with the same decision criteria as at present) – but without having to be defined as SPADs.
The key changes to the GORT3119-A form were: addition of the word 'provisional' to the title; removal of references to SPAD Categories B, C and D and removal of the need for signatures. The opportunity has also been taken to revise some parts of the form which had become outdated and / or illogical.

Form GORT3119-B Provisional SPAD Data Collection Form GOR3119-B (Railway Undertaking) (New Issue)
The purpose of the revision to the RT3119 forms was to align them with the new issue of GORT3119 and GOGN3519 as a result of the definition of a SPAD within the Railways and Other Guided Transport Systems (Safety) Regulations (2006) – as amended in 2011, and also to address proposal 11/017 (received from industry, to cater for ERTMS incidents). The new ROGS definition means that incidents that would have previously been designated as SPAD Categories B, C and D, no longer require that labelling. With only one meaning of a SPAD (as defined in law), this means that what were Category B, C and D events will continue to be treated as 'operating incidents' (with the same decision criteria as at present) – but without having to be defined as SPADs.
The key changes to the GORT3119-B form were: addition of the word 'provisional' to the title; updating job titles (section 3.15 and 9.4) and DRA status in section 4.5 and removal of the need for signatures. The opportunity has also been taken to revise some parts of the form which had become outdated and / or illogical.

Form GORT3119-C Provisional ERTMS SPAD Data Collection Form GORT3119-C (Infrastructure Manager) (New)
Form GORT3119-C is a new form, to be used by infrastructure managers when gathering data on signals passed at danger incidents on a 'ERTMS Level 2 without signals' route.

Uncontrolled When Printed

Form GORT3119-D Provisional ERTMS SPAD Data Collection Form GORT3119-D (Railway Undertaking) (New)
Form GORT3119-D is a new form, to be used by railway undertakings when gathering data on signals passed at danger incidents on an 'ERTMS Level 2 without signals' route.

GERT8070 Testing Railway Safety Critical Workers for Drugs and Alcohol (New Issue)
Proposal 11/003 was to review current GEGN8570 (Guidance on the Management of Drugs and Alcohol) in line with suggested words produced by the Association of Train Operating Companies (ATOC) and update its contents and structure using the new RSSB template. This follows the findings of research project T865 (Updating drugs and alcohol policies and testing methods). The changes resulted in the transfer of one clause from GEGN8570 to GERT8070 Testing Railway Safety Critical Workers for Drugs and Alcohol (requirement to inform the person appointed to lead a formal or local investigation of the result of any test for drugs and alcohol).

GEGN8570 Guidance on the Management of Drugs and Alcohol (New Issue)
Proposal 11/003 was to review current GEGN8570 (Guidance on the Management of Drugs and Alcohol) in line with suggested words produced by the Association of Train Operating Companies (ATOC) and update its contents and structure using the new RSSB template. This follows the findings of research project T865 (Updating drugs and alcohol policies and testing methods). The changes resulted in the transfer of one clause from GEGN8570 to GERT8070 Testing Railway Safety Critical Workers for Drugs and Alcohol (requirement to inform the person appointed to lead a formal or local investigation of the result of any test for drugs and alcohol).

GERT8403 ERTMS Key Management (New)
This document mandates requirements for the management of cryptographic keys on the mainline railway to facilitate secure ERTMS data radio communication. ERTMS exchanges information between trackside equipment and trains and vice versa in the form of data messages. When radio is used for these data messages a secure connection is required, and corresponding keys must be available on either side of the connection.

GEGN8603 Guidance on ERTMS Key Management (New)
This document provides guidance on GERT8403 ERTMS Key Management, which mandates requirements for the management of cryptographic keys on the mainline railway to facilitate secure ERTMS data radio communication. ERTMS exchanges information between trackside equipment and trains and vice versa in the form of data messages. When radio is used for these data messages a secure connection is required, and corresponding keys must be available on either side of the connection.

.

Table of Changes – March 2013

Document Number / Title	New	Cancelled	Small Scale Change	Comments	Date Document comes into force	Document ceases to be in force from
NEW CHANGES FOR MARCH 2013 ISSUE						
RGSC01 Iss 4 **Railway Group Standards Code**	●			Supersedes RGSC01 Iss 3	03 June 2013	
RGSC01 Iss 3 **Railway Group Standards Code**		●		Superseded by RGSC01 Iss 4		03 June 2013
RGSC02 Iss 3 **Standards Manual**	●			Supersedes RGSC02 Iss 2	03 June 2013	
RGSC02 Iss 2 **Standards Manual**		●		Superseded by RGSC02 Iss 3		03 June 2013
TDRAD054 Iss 1 **Procedures for The Use of Band 111 / NRN Base Stations for Engineering / Emergency Work**		●				01 June 2013
GKRT0094 Iss 1 **Train Voice Radio Systems**	●			Supersedes GERT8080 Iss 1, GERT8081 Iss 1 and GERT8082 Iss 1	01 June 2013	
GERT8080 Iss 1 **Train Radio Systems for Voice and Related Messaging Communications**		●		Superseded by GKRT0094 Iss 1		01 June 2013
GERT8081 Iss 1 **Requirements for GSM-R Voice Radio System**		●		Superseded by GKRT0094 Iss 1		01 June 2013
GERT8082 Iss 1 **GSM-R Cab mobile, Great Britain Open Interface Requirements (Rapid Response)**		●		Superseded by GKRT0094 Iss 1		01 June 2013
RS100 Iss 1 **Good Practice Guide on Competence Development**	●			Supersedes RS220 Iss 2, RS221 Iss 1, RS501 Iss 2, RS701 Iss 2, RS702 Iss 1	Immediate (02 March 2013)	
RS220 Iss 2 **Good Practice in Training**		●		Superseded by RS100 Iss 1		Immediate (02 March 2013)

Document Number / Title	New	Cancelled	Small Scale Change	Comments	Date Document comes into force	Document ceases to be in force from
RS221 Iss 1 **Good Practice Guide to Train Driver Training**		●		Superseded by RS100 Iss 1		Immediate (02 March 2013)
RS501 Iss 2 **Good Practice Guide on Simulation as a Tool for Training and Assessment**		●		Superseded by RS100 Iss 1		Immediate (02 March 2013)
RS701 Iss 2 **Good Practice Guide on Competence Review and Assessment**		●		Superseded by RS100 Iss 1		Immediate (02 March 2013)
RS702 Iss 1 **Good Practice Guide for Driver Assessment**		●		Superseded by RS100 Iss 1		Immediate (02 March 2013)
GKRT0186 Iss 1 **Safety Requirements of Signal Post Telephone Systems**		●				01 June 2013
GKGN0694 Iss 1 **Guidance on Train Voice Radio Systems**	●			Supersedes GEGN8580 Iss 1 and GEGN8582 Iss 1	01 June 2013	
GEGN8580 Iss 1 **Guidance on Train Radio Systems for Voice and Related Messaging Communications**		●		Superseded by GKGN0694 Iss 1		01 June 2013
GEGN8582 Iss 1 **Guidance on GSM-R Cab Mobile, Great Britain Open Interface Requirements (Rapid Response)**		●		Superseded by GKGN0694 Iss 1		01 June 2013
RIS-0794-CCS Iss 1 **Rail Industry Standard for GSM-R Train Voice Radio**	●			Supersedes RIS-3082-CCS Iss 1	01 June 2013	
RIS-3082-CCS Iss 1 **Rail Industry Standard for GSM-R Cab Mobile, Great Britain Open Interface (Rapid Response)**		●		Superseded by RIS-0794-CCS Iss 1		01 June 2013
BR1609 Iss 2 **VHF Band III Radio for the National Radio Network Incorporating the Train Overlay System**	●				This document was issued in August 1987	

Document Number / Title	New	Cancelled	Small Scale Change	Comments	Date Document comes into force	Document ceases to be in force from
BR1661 Iss D **Train to Signalbox Radio System (Train Radio)**	●				This document was issued in March 1990	
RIS-2706-RST Iss 1 **Rail Industry Standard for Recording of Rolling Stock Data**	●				Immediate (02 March 2013)	
RIS-2773-RST Iss 1 **Format for Vehicle Gauging Data**	●				Immediate (02 March 2013)	
GORT3053 Iss 4 **Working Manual for Rail Handling and Carriage of Dangerous Goods – Contents and Glossary**	●			Supersedes GORM3053 Iss 3	01 June 2013	
GORM3053 Iss 3 **Working Manual for Rail Staff Handling and Carriage of Dangerous Goods - Glossary**		●		Superseded by GORT3053 Iss 4		01 June 2013
GORT3053-1 Iss 6 **Working Manual for Rail Staff Handling and Carriage of Dangerous Goods – Appendix 1 – List of Dangerous Goods with their United Nations Number, Dangerous Goods Class and TOPS Commodity Code**	●			Supersedes GORT3053-App 1 Iss 5	01 June 2013	
GORT3053-App 1 Iss 5 **Working Manual for Rail Staff Handling and Carriage of Dangerous Goods – List of Dangerous Goods with their United Nations Number, Dangerous Goods Class and TOPS Commodity Code**		●		Superseded by GORT3053-1 Iss 6		01 June 2013

Document Number / Title	New	Cancelled	Small Scale Change	Comments	Date Document comes into force	Document ceases to be in force from
GORT3053-2 Iss 5 **Working Manual for Rail Staff Handling and Carriage of Dangerous Goods – Appendix 2 – Bulk Traffic Dangerous Goods, Wagon and Container Separation Distance Requirements / Prohibitions**	●			Supersedes GORT3053-App 2 Iss 4	01 June 2013	
GORT3053-App 2 Iss 4 **Working Manual for Rail Staff Handling and Carriage of Dangerous Goods – Appendix 2 – Bulk Traffic Dangerous Goods, Wagon and Container Separation Distance Requirements / Prohibitions**		●		Superseded by GORT3053-2 Iss 5		01 June 2013
GORT3053-A Iss 4 **Working Manual for Rail Staff Handling and Carriage of Dangerous Goods – Classification, Acceptance and Identification**	●			Supersedes GORT3053-A Iss 3	01 June 2013	
GORT3053-A Iss 3 **Working Manual for Rail Staff Handling and Carriage of Dangerous Goods – Classification, Acceptance and Identification**		●		Superseded by GORT3053-A Iss 4		01 June 2013
GORT3053-B Iss 4 **Working Manual for Rail Staff Handling and Carriage of Dangerous Goods – Hazard Identification**	●			Supersedes GORT3053-B Iss 3	01 June 2013	
GORT3053-B Iss 3 **Working Manual for Rail Staff Handling and Carriage of Dangerous Goods – Hazard Identification**		●		Superseded by GORT3053-B Iss 4		01 June 2013

Document Number / Title	New	Cancelled	Small Scale Change	Comments	Date Document comes into force	Document ceases to be in force from
GORT3053-C Iss 4 **Working Manual for Rail Staff Handling and Carriage of Dangerous Goods – Marshalling, Movement and Loading**	●			Supersedes GORT3053-C Iss 3	01 June 2013	
GORT3053-C Iss 3 **Working Manual for Rail Staff Handling and Carriage of Dangerous Goods – Marshalling, Movement and Loading**		●		Superseded by GORT3053-C Iss 4		01 June 2013
GORT3053-F Iss 5 **Working Manual for Rail Staff Handling and Carriage of Dangerous Goods – Fires and Incidents Involving Dangerous Goods**	●			Supersedes GORT3053-F Iss 4	01 June 2013	
GORT3053-F Iss 4 **Working Manual for Rail Staff Handling and Carriage of Dangerous Goods – Fires and Incidents Involving Dangerous Goods**		●		Superseded by GORT3053-F Iss 5		01 June 2013
GORT3053-PPBL Iss 2 **Pink pages Briefing leaflet**	●			Supersedes GERT8000-PPBL Iss 1	01 June 2013	
GERT8000-PPBL Iss 1 **Pink Pages briefing leaflet**		●		Superseded by GORT3053-PPBL Iss 2		01 June 2013
GORT3056 Iss 3 **Working Manual for Rail Staff Freight Train Operations – Contents and Glossary**	●			Supersedes GORM3056 Iss 2	01 June 2013	
GORM3056 Iss 2 **Working Manual for Rail Staff Freight Train Operations**		●		Superseded by GORT3056 Iss 3		01 June 2013
GORT3056-1 Iss 2 **Working Manual for Rail Staff Freight Train Operations – Appendix 1 – Conversion Chart SLUs – Metres - Feet**	●			Supersedes GORT3056-App A Iss 1	01 June 2013	

Document Number / Title	New	Cancelled	Small Scale Change	Comments	Date Document comes into force	Document ceases to be in force from
GORT3056-App A Iss 1 **Working Manual for Rail Staff Freight Train Operations – Appendix 1 – Conversion Chart SLUs – Metres - Feet**		●		Superseded by GORT3056-1 Iss 2		01 June 2013
GORT3056-2 Iss 2 **Working Manual for Rail Staff Freight Train Operations – Appendix 2 – Exceptional Load Code Words**	●			Supersedes GORT3056-App B Iss 1	01 June 2013	
GORT3056-App B Iss 1 **Working Manual for Rail Staff Freight Train Operations – Exceptional Load Code Words**		●		Superseded by GORT3056-2 Iss 2		01 June 2013
GORT3056-3 Iss 1 **Working Manual for Rail Staff Freight Train Operations – Appendix 3 – Exceptional Load RT3973 Forms**	●				01 June 2013	
GORT3056-A Iss 2 **Working Manual for Rail Staff Freight Train Operations – Introduction and Classification of Freight Trains**		●				01 June 2013
GORT3056-B Iss 3 **Working Manual for Rail Staff Freight Train Operations – Marshalling and Composition of Freight Trains**	●			Supersedes GORT3056-B Iss 2	01 June 2013	
GORT3056-B Iss 2 **Working Manual for Rail Staff Freight Train Operations – Marshalling and Composition of Freight Trains**		●		Superseded by GORT3056-B Iss 3		01 June 2013
GORT3056-C Iss 3 **Working Manual for Rail Staff Freight Train Operations – Principles of Safe Freight Train Operation**	●			Supersedes GORT3056-C Iss 2	01 June 2013	

Document Number / Title	New	Cancelled	Small Scale Change	Comments	Date Document comes into force	Document ceases to be in force from
GORT3056-C Iss 2 **Working Manual for Rail Staff Freight Train Operations – Principles of Safe Freight Train Operation**		●		Superseded by GORT3056-C Iss 3		01 June 2013
GORT3056-D Iss 3 **Working Manual for Rail Staff Freight Train Operations – Defective Vehicles**	●			Supersedes GORT3056-D Iss 2	01 June 2013	
GORT3056-D Iss 2 **Working Manual for Rail Staff Freight Train Operations – Defective Vehicles**		●		Superseded by GORT3056-D Iss 3		01 June 2013
GORT3056-E Iss 3 **Working Manual for Rail Staff Freight Train Operations – Movement of Freight Trains**	●			Supersedes GORT3056-E Iss 2	01 June 2013	
GORT3056-E Iss 2 **Working Manual for Rail Staff Freight Train Operations – Movement of Freight Trains**		●		Superseded by GORT3056-E Iss 3		01 June 2013
GORT3056-F Iss 2 **Working Manual for Rail Staff Freight Train Operations – Incidents**		●				01 June 2013
GORT3056-G Iss 2 **Working Manual for Rail Staff Freight Train Operations – Safe Loading of Freight**		●				01 June 2013
GORT3056-H Iss 1 **Working Manual for Rail Staff Freight Train Operations – International Traffic**		●				01 June 2013
GORT3056-J Iss 2 **Working Manual for Rail Staff Freight Train Operations – Intermodal Traffic**	●			Supersedes GORT3056-J Iss 1	01 June 2013	
GORT3056-J Iss 1 **Working Manual for Rail Staff Freight Train Operations – Intermodal Traffic**		●		Superseded by GORT3056-J Iss 2		01 June 2013

Document Number / Title	New	Cancelled	Small Scale Change	Comments	Date Document comes into force	Document ceases to be in force from
GORT3056-K Iss 2 **Working Manual for Rail Staff Freight Train Operations – Vehicles Requiring Special Conditions of Travel**	●			Supersedes GORT3056-K Iss 1	01 June 2013	
GORT3056-K Iss 1 **Working Manual for Rail Staff Freight Train Operations – Vehicles Requiring Special Conditions of Travel**		●		Superseded by GORT3056-K Iss 2		01 June 2013
GORT3436 Iss 3 **Information for Safe Train Operation**			●	Supersedes GORT3436 Iss 2	01 June 2013	
GORT3436 Iss 2 **Information for Safe Train Operation**		●		Superseded by GORT3436 Iss 3		01 June 2013
GOGN3653 Iss 2 **Guidance for Safe Freight Train Operation**	●			Supersedes GOGN3653 Iss 1	Immediate (02 March 2013)	
GOGN3653 Iss 1 **Guidance for Safe Freight Train Operation**		●		Superseded by GOGN3653 Iss 2		Immediate (02 March 2013)
GOGN3676 Iss 3 **Guidance on the Carriage of Dangerous Goods by Rail**			●	Supersedes GOGN3676 Iss 2	Immediate (02 March 2013)	
GOGN3676 Iss 2 **Guidance on the Carriage of Dangerous Goods by Rail**		●		Superseded by GOGN3676 Iss 3		Immediate (02 March 2013)
RIS-3703-TOM Iss 2 **Rail Industry Standard for Passenger Train Dispatch and Platform Safety Measures**	●			Supersedes RIS-3703-TOM Iss 1	Immediate (02 March 2013)	
RIS-3703-TOM Iss 1 **Rail Industry Standard for Passenger Train Dispatch and Platform Safety Measures**		●		Superseded by RIS-3703-TOM Iss 2		Immediate (02 March 2013)
GERT8000-AM Iss 16 **AM Amendments module**	●			Supersedes GERT8000-AM Iss 15	01 June 2013	

Uncontrolled When Printed

Document Number / Title	New	Cancelled	Small Scale Change	Comments	Date Document comes into force	Document ceases to be in force from
GERT8000-AM Iss 15 **AM Amendments module**		●		Superseded by GERT8000-AM Iss 16		01 June 2013
GERT8000-Index Iss 16 **Rule Book Index and Glossary**	●			Supersedes GERT8000-Index Iss 15	01 June 2013	
GERT8000-Index Iss 15 **Rule Book Index and Glossary**		●		Superseded by GERT8000-Index Iss 16		01 June 2013
GERT8000-Issue Iss 21 **Rule Book module issue history**	●			Supersedes GERT8000-Issue Iss 20	01 June 2013	
GERT8000-Issue Iss 20 **Rule Book module issue history**		●		Superseded by GERT8000-Issue Iss 21		01 June 2013
GERT8000-RBBL Iss 24 **Rule Book briefing leaflet**	●			Supersedes GERT8000-RBBL Iss 23	01 June 2013	
GERT8000-RBBL Iss 23 **Rule Book briefing leaflet**		●		Superseded by GERT8000-RBBL Iss 24		01 June 2013
GERT8000-SS1 Iss 3 **Station duties and train dispatch**	●			Supersedes GERT8000-SS1 Iss 2	01 June 2013	
GERT8000-SS1 Iss 2 **Station duties and train dispatch**		●		Superseded by GERT8000-SS1 Iss 3		01 June 2013
GERT8000-SS2 Iss 3 **Shunting**	●			Supersedes GERT8000-SS2 Iss 2	01 June 2013	
GERT8000-SS2 Iss 2 **Shunting**		●		Superseded by GERT8000-SS2 Iss 3		01 June 2013
GERT8001 Iss 37 **Changes to National Operations Publications for March 2013**	●			Supersedes GERT8001 Iss 36	Immediate (02 March 2013)	
GERT8001 Iss 36 **Changes to National Operations Publications for December 2012**		●		Superseded by GERT8001 Iss 37		Immediate (02 March 2013)
GERT8021 Iss 1 **Facilities for Emergency Voice Communication with Control Rooms**		●				01 June 2013

Document Number / Title	New	Cancelled	Small Scale Change	Comments	Date Document comes into force	Document ceases to be in force from
GEGN8521 Iss 1 **Guidance on Providing Facilities for Emergency Voice Communications with Control Rooms**		●				01 June 2013
ATOCGN013 Iss 1 **ATOC Guidance Note – Control of Risk Posed by the Presence of Legionella Bacteria in On-train Non-potable Water Systems**	●				Document came into force January 2013	
ATOCGN014 Iss 1 **ATOC Guidance Note – Major Incidents – Preparation of Aide-Memoires for Senior Managers**	●				Document came into force December 2012	
ATOCGN015 Iss 1 **ATOC Guidance Note – Extreme Weather Arrangements including Failure or Non-Availability of On-Train Environment Control Systems**	●			Supersedes ATOCGPG 003 Iss 1, ATOCGPG 004 Iss 2, ATOCGPG 017 Iss 1	Document came into force December 2012	
ATOCGPG003 Iss 1 **ATOC Good Practice Guide – Hot Weather Arrangements**		●		Superseded by ATOCGN 015 Iss 1		Document ceased to be in force from December 2012
ATOCGPG004 Iss 2 **ATOC Good Practice Guide – Responding to the Failure or Non-Availability of On-Train Air-Conditioning**		●		Superseded by ATOCGN 015 Iss 1		Document ceased to be in force from December 2012
ATOCGPG017 Iss 1 **ATOC Good Practice Guide – Responding to Stranded Trains**		●		Superseded by ATOCGN 015 Iss 1		Document ceased to be in force from December 2012
ONGOING CHANGES FROM PREVIOUS ISSUES						
GKRT0045 Iss 3 **Lineside Signals, Indicators and Layout of Signals**			●	Supersedes GKRT0045 Iss 2	Immediate (02 March 2013)	
GKRT0045 Iss 2 **Lineside Signals, Indicators and Layout of Signals**		●		Superseded by GKRT0045 Iss 3		Immediate (02 March 2013)

Uncontrolled When Printed

Document Number / Title	New	Cancelled	Small Scale Change	Comments	Date Document comes into force	Document ceases to be in force from
GKGN0645 Iss 3 **Guidance on Lineside Signals, Indicators and Layout of Signals**			●	Supersedes GKGN0645 Iss 2	Immediate (02 March 2013)	
GKGN0645 Iss 2 **Guidance on Lineside Signals, Indicators and Layout of Signals**		●		Superseded by GKGN0645 Iss 3		Immediate (02 March 2013)
GKRT0192 Iss 2 **Level Crossing Interface Requirements**			●	Supersedes GKRT0192 Iss 1	Immediate (02 March 2013)	
GKRT0192 Iss 1 **Level Crossing Interface Requirements**		●		Superseded by GKRT0192 Iss 2		Immediate (02 March 2013)
GKGN0692 Iss 2 **Guidance on Level Crossing Interface Requirements**			●	Supersedes GKGN0692 Iss 1	Immediate (02 March 2013)	
GKGN0692 Iss 1 **Guidance on Level Crossing Interface Requirements**		●		Superseded by GKGN0692 Iss 2		Immediate (02 March 2013)
GORT3119 Iss 3 **Accident and Incident Investigation**	●			Supersedes GORT3119 Iss 2	Immediate (02 March 2013)	
GORT3119 Iss 2 **Accident and Incident Investigation**		●		Superseded by GORT3119 Iss 3		Immediate (02 March 2013)
GOGN3519 Iss 3 **Guidance on Accident and Incident Investigation**	●			Supersedes GOGN3519 Iss 2	Immediate (02 March 2013)	
GOGN3519 Iss 2 **Guidance on Accident and Incident Investigation**		●		Superseded by GOGN3519 Iss 3		Immediate (02 March 2013)
Form GORT3119-A Iss 6 **Provisional SPAD Data Collection Form GORT3119-A (Infrastructure Manager)**	●			Supersedes Form GORT3119-A Iss 5	Immediate (02 March 2013)	
Form GORT3119-A Iss 5 **SPAD Data Collection Form (Infrastructure Manager)**		●		Superseded by Form GORT3119-A Iss 6		Immediate (02 March 2013)

Document Number / Title	New	Cancelled	Small Scale Change	Comments	Date Document comes into force	Document ceases to be in force from
Form GORT3119-B Iss 6 **Provisional SPAD Data Collection Form GORT3119-B (Railway Undertaking)**	●			Supersedes Form GORT3119-B Iss 5	Immediate (02 March 2013)	
Form GORT3119-B Iss 5 **SPAD Data Collection Form (Railway Undertaking)**		●		Superseded by Form GORT3119-B Iss 6		Immediate (02 March 2013)
Form GORT3119-C Iss 1 **Provisional ERTMS SPAD Data Collection Form GORT3119-C (Infrastructure Manager)**	●				Immediate (02 March 2013)	
Form RT3119-D Iss 1 **Provisional ERTMS SPAD Data Collection Form GORT3119-D (Railway Undertaking)**	●				Immediate (02 March 2013)	
GERT8070 Iss 3 **Testing Railway Safety Critical Workers for Drugs and Alcohol**			●	Supersedes GERT8070 Iss 2	Immediate (02 March 2013)	
GERT8070 Iss 2 **Testing Railway Safety Critical Workers for Drugs and Alcohol**		●		Superseded by GERT8070 Iss 3		Immediate (02 March 2013)
GEGN8570 Iss 2 **Guidance on the Management of Drugs and Alcohol**	●			Supersedes GEGN8570 Iss 1	Immediate (02 March 2013)	
GEGN8570 Iss 1 **Guidance on the Management of Drugs and Alcohol**		●		Superseded by GEGN8570 Iss 2		Immediate (02 March 2013)
GERT8403 Iss 1 **ERTMS Key Management**	●				01 June 2013	
GEGN8603 Iss 1 **Guidance on ERTMS Key Management**	●				01 June 2013	

Uncontrolled When Printed

Useful Information

Catalogue Structure
Document Category
Document Information Code
Documents Prefixed RIS
Documents with a Single Two-letter Prefix
Example of a Typical Catalogue Entry
Approval of Railway Group Standards
Changing Railway Group Standards
Deviations from Railway Group Standards
Programmed Consultation Dates
Duty Holders
Railway Group Standard Cross References
Purchasing Railway Group Standards
Purchasing National Operations Publications
Price Codes
Accessing Railway Group Standards Electronically
Enquiry Desk Services
Quality Standards

Catalogue Structure

Railway Group Standards Catalogue has a number of different sections. The main body of the catalogue is the Document Titles and Descriptions. This is organised according to the lead Standards Committee that approves changes to the documents concerned.

Each Railway Group Standard (RGS) has a reference code which indicates which activity the standard relates to, and what type of document it is.

Document Category

The standards are divided into categories:

Category

GA Administration
Policy management and administration of Railway Group Standards.

GC Track & Structures (Infrastructure)
Permanent way, structures and construction safety.

GE All Infrastructure manager and Railway undertaking Requirements
Multidisciplinary activities.

GH Health & Safety
Operational and occupational health and safety.

GI Infrastructure
Multidisciplinary infrastructure activities.

GK Train Control & Communications (Control Command and Signalling)
Signalling & telecommunications.

GL Electrification (Energy)
Electrification Systems and electrical installations.

GM Trains (Rolling Stock)
Trains and rolling stock.

GO Operations (Traffic Operation and Management)
Operations, operational signalling, special operations such as the acceptance & carriage of dangerous goods, and safety-critical activities.

GP Plant
Fixed and mobile plant.

Document Identification Code

The next two characters of the standard's reference code indicate the type of document.

RT Railway Group Standard (RGS)

A RGS is a document produced pursuant to the RGS Code (or equivalent predecessor documents, including previous versions of the RGS Code) defining mandatory requirements in respect of the mainline railway. These mandatory requirements may be in the form of technical and / or operational requirements, or a process for cooperation. Compliance with RGSs is mandatory for Infrastructure Managers and Railway Undertakings who operate on the GB mainline railway. Where appropriate, a deviation to comply with an alternative to the content of a RGS may be granted by a Standards Committee in accordance with the RGS Code.

RC Rail Industry Approved Code of Practice (RACOP)

A non-mandatory document that defines a potentially suitable and sufficient means (but not the only means) of meeting an identified set of mandatory measures within a RGS. A RACOP therefore relates to meeting a set of measures that involve co-operation between two or more duty holders. A RACOP will contain a methodology which is designed to deliver the requirements of the RGS, but where an alternative methodology could be adopted. A RACOP will generally quote the relevant mandatory measures from a RGS alongside the non-mandatory content in order to provide a complete picture.

GN Rail Industry Guidance Note (GN)

A non-mandatory document that is intended to provide potentially helpful information relating to the management and/or operation of the railway system or its subsystems. A GN may provide background to the measures contained within a RGS or describe information in relation to an issue that is outside the scope of RGSs. In some circumstances a GN may quote the mandatory measures from a RGS alongside the non-mandatory content in order to provide a complete picture.

RM Manual

A suite of Railway Group Standards covering a particular area or activity.

GPG / RS Good Practice Guide

A non-mandatory industry support document that shares subject specific examples of proven good practice, interventions and approaches in a given topic. The information is offered for consideration and adoption by transport undertakings if they feel it is appropriate to do so.

Document Prefixed RIS (Rail Industry Standard)

A Rail Industry Standard is a non-mandatory document that a group of members of RSSB, including at least one duty holder, have requested RSSB to produce and which that group has agreed to work to. A RIS defines functional or technical provisions in circumstances when management of a railway subsystem does not necessitate co-operation between duty holders but where there are expected to be economic benefits from that group all doing things in a similar manner. They will have a number format RIS-nnnn-XXX, where RIS is the acronym for Rail Industry Standard, nnn is the four digit unique number identifier and XXX represents the three letter acronym of the approving standards committee. There are six standards committees as follows:

PLT - Plant
RST - Rolling Stock
INS - Infrastructure
TOM - Traffic Operation and Management
ENE - Energy
CCS - Control Command and Signalling

Specific responsibilities and compliance requirements are the subject of the internal procedures or contract conditions of the companies which choose to adopt the RISs, therefore any deviations should be managed by those companies.

Documents with a Single Two-letter Prefix

RT These are guidance documents mandated by a Railway Group Standard, such as RT3183, Agents Point Setting Form.

BR These are Railway Group Standards still numbered with a British Rail number. They will be given a new reference code when they are revised.

Example of Typical Catalogue Entry

	Document No.	Issue No.	Date	Price Code
	GKRT0060	Iss 4	Jun 03	(A)
Title	Interlocking Principles			

Description This document mandates the principles of interlocking of signals, points and other parts of the signalling system so that safe operation of trains is ensured.

Approval of Railway Group Standards

The Railway Group Standards Code mandates the process for operating standards committees. The role of the standards committee is to approve the development of RGS and associated documents, and approve deviations from Railway Group Standards. Information regarding standards committees and their members, meeting dates and cut-off dates for submission of documents can be found on the RSSB website at http://www.rssb.co.uk/RGS/Pages/StandardsCommitteesPage.aspx. A list of standards committee members can also be found in the Members Lists section of the RGS Catalogue.

Changing Railway Group Standards

The process for making changes is detailed in the Railway Group Standards Code issue three, section five. If you wish to submit a proposal for change, please complete the form available from either the RSSB website at http://www.rssb.co.uk/RGS/Pages/STANDARDSCHANGE.aspx or from the Standards Management Department of RSSB on 020 3142 5570.

When a proposal to change a RGS is received by RSSB, it is recorded in the Proposals Register which tracks the progress of the proposal through the initial consideration process and the RSSB Standards Programme which tracks the development of documents. Both these stages are documented in the Railway Group Standards Code. The proposals register and the RSSB Standards Programme can be found on the RSSB website at http://www.rssb.co.uk/RGS/Pages/STANDARDSCHANGE.aspx.

Proposals for changes to RGSs may arise as a result of RSSB's own review process or as a result of proposals from the industry.

Deviations from Railway Group Standards

A deviation is a permission to comply with a specified alternative to a requirement in a Railway Group Standard (RGS) in circumstances where it is not appropriate to change the RGS.

All deviations from RGSs are to be in accordance with the Railway Group Standards Code (the Code) and Standards Manual (the Manual).

The deviation application form and a list of all currently issued deviations can be found on the Deviations page of the RSSB website: http://www.rssb.co.uk/RGS/Pages/DEVIATIONS.aspx.

For further information regarding deviation application forms or certificates, please contact the Standards Management Department of RSSB on 020 3142 5570.

Programmed Consultation Dates

Up-to-date information on documents in draft and proposed withdrawals, including details of their consultation periods is now provided on the Standards Programme which can be found on the RSSB website at http://www.rssb.co.uk.

The information on the website is updated monthly and is therefore a more accurate representation of forthcoming consultation than was previously provided on this page.

Infrastructure manager

Infrastructure manager has the meaning given to it in European Directive 91/440/EEC on the development of the Community's railways. For the purpose of the Code, this is limited to those infrastructure managers who hold a safety authorisation issued in respect of the mainline railway.

Railway undertaking

Railway undertaking has the meaning given to it in European Directive 91/440/EEC on the development of the Community's railways. For the purpose of the Code, this is limited to those railway undertakings who hold a Part B safety certificate issued in respect of the mainline railway.

Railway Group Standards Cross References

Many Railway Group Standards refer to other Railway Group Standards and where this is the case these cross references are listed on the last page of the document.

The ongoing process of updating Railway Group Standards can lead to cross references becoming out of date. Where you find that a referenced document is no longer available please contact the RSSB enquiry desk - enquirydesk@rssb.co.uk for the new document to be applied.

Purchasing Railway Group Standards

A copy of the RGS order form can be found in the forms section of the RGS Catalogue or from the RGSonline website 'Useful Information' section for Purchasing Railway Group Standards. You will need the following details in order to complete the form:

- Railway Group Standards code and title
- Quantity
- Price
- Purchaser's full name, business, address and telephone number
- Credit card details, cheque or purchase order number

Then fax or post it to our distributors:

Willsons Printers Limited

Highlander House

Cross Street

Newark

Nottinghamshire

NG24 1PP

Tel: 01636702334

Fax: 01636701396

Please ensure that you include your credit card details, purchase order or a cheque made payable to Willsons Printers. Payments can also be made by BACS - please contact Willsons for company bank details. Orders received will be dispatched within five working days.

Purchasing National Operations Publications

National Operations Publications are Railway Group Standards which set out mandatory requirements for direct application in the workplace. These include:

- Modular Rule Book (GERT8000)
- Working Manual for Rail Staff: Handling and Carriage of Dangerous Goods (GORM3053)
- Working Manual for Rail Staff: Freight Train Operators (GORM3056)
- Rule Book Forms

Details of these documents can be found in the section 'Document Titles and Descriptions' for Traffic Operation and Management.

As these documents are subject to frequent change, amendments which do not justify the reissue of the module or section of the working manual are published in GERT8001, Changes to National Operations Publications.

Willsons Printers Limited supplies the modules and handbooks which make up the Modular Rule Book, Working Manual and Rule Book forms. You can order these documents by contacting Denise Atkinson at:

Willsons Printers Limited
Highlander House
Cross Street
Newark
Nottinghamshire, NG24 1PP
Tel: 01636 702334
Fax: 01636 701396

Price Codes

(A) = £7.00: up to 50 sides
(B) = £10.00: 51-100 sides
(C) = £12.50: 101-150 sides
(W) = Price available directly from Willsons Printers
(Z) = Price or details upon request (from RSSB enquiry desk)

Accessing Railway Group Standards Electronically

The definitive versions of Railway Group Standards and related documents can be accessed from the RGSonline website (www.rgsonline.co.uk). The web service is free to access and there is no requirement for a password to enter the site.

Enquiry Desk Services

The enquiry desk is available between the hours of 09:00 and 16:30 for phone call enquiries.

Services provided by the RSSB enquiry desk include:

- Rule Book enquiries
- Railway Group Standards enquiries
- Status of Railway Group Standards
- Requests for RSSB publications and documents
- Advice on accessing RGSs on the internet (www.rgsonline.co.uk)
- Technical queries (these may take slightly longer to deal with as they are passed onto the relevant technical specialist)

If your query does not fit into any of the above mentioned, please call us anyway and we will do our best to help you, or put you in touch with someone who can.

Enquiry Desk
RSSB
Block 2, Angel Square
1 Torrens Street
London, EC1V 1NY

Tel: 020 3142 5400
Fax: 020 3142 5669
Email: enquirydesk@rssb.co.uk

Uncontrolled When Printed

Quality Standards

Railway Group Standards are produced under a management system certified by BSI against requirements of ISO9001:2008.

FS 45571

Uncontrolled When Printed

Amendments and Clarifications to Current Documents

AMENDMENTS AND CLARIFICATIONS TO CURRENT DOCUMENTS – MARCH 2013

The following documents have been published containing minor errors or ambiguities.
These are listed below with the amendment / clarification text. Please note that references to these amendments / clarifications have been noted in the Document Titles and Descriptions section of the catalogue under their relative documents.

The changes will be incorporated into the documents during the next revision of the document.

NEW AMENDMENTS / CLARIFICATIONS

☒Amendment	☐ Clarification (For definitions see the Standards Manual - Part 2)				
Document number	GO/RT3421	Document issue no.	3	Document issue date	December 2009
Document title	Dangerous Goods – Rail Conditions of Acceptance				
Clause number/ Document location	1.2.1.2				
Original text	The CDG Regulations are revised and re-issued every two years (2007, 2009, 2011, etc.) to align with the RID Regulations that are also revised and re-issued to the same timescale. Where references are made to either CDG or RID they refer to the version in force. Stakeholders should ensure that they are referring to the most up to date version of those Regulations				
Reason for Amendment	This clause has been amended to bring it up to date.				
Amendment text	The CDG Regulations are revised and re-issued every two years (2011, 2013, etc.) to align with the RID Regulations that are also revised and re-issued to the same timescale. Where references are made to either CDG or RID they refer to the version in force. Stakeholders should ensure that they are referring to the most up to date version of those Regulations				
Clause number/ Document location	2.2.1.1				
Original text	Railway undertakings shall apply: a) the prohibitions on mixing of specified dangerous goods on the same train; and b) the minimum separation distances required between specified dangerous goods detailed in GO/RM3053 to mitigate the risk in the event of an accident or incident.				
Reason for Amendment	This clause has been amended to reflect the revised nomenclature of the Working Manual for Rail Staff – Freight Train Operations from GO/RM3053 to GO/RT3053				
Amendment text	Railway undertakings shall apply: a) the prohibitions on mixing of specified dangerous goods on the same train; and b) the minimum separation distances required between specified dangerous goods detailed in GO/RT3053 to mitigate the risk in the event of an accident or incident.				
Clause number/ Document location	References Documents referenced in the text				
Original text	Railway Group Standards GO/RM3053 Working Manual for Rail Staff – Handling and Carriage of Dangerous Goods				
Reason for Amendment	This clause has been amended to reflect the revised nomenclature of the Working Manual for Rail Staff – Freight Train Operations from GO/RM3053 to GO/RT3053				
Amendment text	Railway Group Standards GO/RT3053 Working Manual for Rail Staff – Handling and Carriage of Dangerous Goods				

AMENDMENTS AND CLARIFICATIONS TO CURRENT DOCUMENTS

☐ Amendment	☒ Clarification (For definitions see the Standards Manual - Part 2)				
Document number	GO/RC3537	Document issue no.	5	Document issue date	September 2011
Document title	Recommendations for Defective On-Train Equipment				
Clause number/ Document location	RC48 Train radio - Secure train radio systems – Cab-Secure Radio (CSR) and GSM-R (where functionally separate from ERTMS operation)				
Original text	RC48.1 If the secure train radio system equipment becomes inoperative on a DO passenger train in service, the passengers should be detrained at the first suitable station, after which the train should proceed only as far as the next available location. If a guard can be provided and National Radio Network (NRN) (or alternative transportable equipment) is available and operative, the train may complete its journeys for the remainder of the day, finishing its final journey at a maintenance depot. If NRN is available and operative, the train may proceed empty to a maintenance depot. RC48.2 If a train other than a DO passenger train enters service with the secure train radio equipment inoperative, or if the secure train radio equipment becomes defective when it is in service, and NRN train radio equipment or alternative transportable equipment is available and operative, the train may complete its journeys for the remainder of the day, but it should end its final journey of the day at a maintenance depot. RC48.3 If the secure train radio equipment becomes inoperative on a train other than a DO passenger train when it is in service, and if NRN train radio equipment (or alternative transportable equipment) is not available and operative, the train should proceed only as far as the next available location. In the case of a passenger train, the passengers should be detrained at the first suitable station, after which the train should proceed only as far as the next available location.				
Reason for Clarification	Following a request from industry partners to clarify the definition of an onboard GSM-R failure, a risk assessment has been carried out. This clarification should now enable Railway Undertakings to revise their DOTE accordingly and have a common understanding with the Infrastructure Manager.				
Clarification text	RC48.4 A GSM-R defective cab radio is considered to be one that displays: • Failure XX. • MT Fatal. • Cab Radio Flt. • EPROM/RAM Flt. • A blank screen. RC48.5 If the GSM-R cab radio displays GSM-R GB (indicating that it is attached to the network), then it should be assumed that the radio is operative as it should be capable of sending and receiving calls (including Railway Emergency Calls). RC48.6 If the GSM-R cab radio cannot be registered for any reason but it is attached to the GB GSM-R network, then the train may enter or remain in service.				

ONGOING AMENDMENTS/CLARIFICATIONS FROM PREVIOUS ISSUES

Document number	GK/RT0054	Document issue	1	Document issue date March 1998
Title:	Radio Electronic Token Block			
Section:	8		Clause number	8.2d
Amendment / Clarification text	The text in clause 8.2d reads: 'display a No Token message when a token is returned and before the next token is received'. It should read: 'be blank when no token message is present'. This correction clarifies that a 'No Token' message is not shown on the display when a message is not present.			

Document number	GK/RT0060	Document issue	4	Document issue date June 2003
Title:	Interlocking Principles			
Section:	Appendix 2, Table3		Clause number	22
Amendment text	In line 22 (Junction and route indicators required to be proved alight); under PoSA class, delete 'Yes', insert 'No'. Reason for change is to remove inconsistency with GE/RT8071.			

☒Amendment	☐ Clarification (For definitions see the Standards Manual - Part 2)				
Document number	GK/RT0075	Document issue no.	Two	Document issue date	September 2011
Document title	Lineside Signal Spacing and Speed Signage				
Clause number / Document location	3.4.1.5 – currently numbered 3.3.1.5 (page 25)				
Original text	3.3.1.5 Warning boards shall be positioned in accordance with Appendix D, using the deceleration distance criteria in Appendix X.				
Reason for Amendment	Typographical error: clause number '3.3.1.5' should read '3.4.1.5'. This requires an amendment as 3.3.1.5 is referenced in both the standard and guidance note, so there is potential for confusion since it occurs twice in the standard.				
Amendment text	3.4.1.5 Warning boards shall be positioned in accordance with Appendix D, using the deceleration distance criteria in Appendix X.				

AMENDMENTS AND CLARIFICATIONS TO CURRENT DOCUMENTS

☒ Amendment ☐ Clarification (For definitions see the Standards Manual - Part 2)					
Document number	GK/RT0075	Document issue no.	Two	Document issue date	September 2011
Document title	Lineside Signal Spacing and Speed Signage				
Clause number / Document location	Appendix X3; page 49 of 58				
Original text	Column headed 1 in 200 5F: Entry for Initial speed of 75 mph: 1247 Entry for Initial speed of 80 mph: 1247				
Reason for Amendment	Typographical error – the corresponding entries in GK/GN0675 are correct.				
Amendment text	Column headed 1 in 200 5F: Entry for Initial speed of 75 mph: 1358 Entry for Initial speed of 80 mph: 1358				

☐ Amendment ☒ Clarification (For definitions see the Standards Manual - Part 2)					
Document number	RIS-1800-ENE	Document issue no.	1	Document issue date	September 2010
Document title	Rail Industry Standard for Network and Depot Interface Management - Isolation Documentation				
Clause number / Document location	2.2.3				
Original text	2.2.3 A template for local isolation instructions is set out in Appendix 1.				
Reason for Clarification	The Appendix is titled ‘Appendix A’ not ‘Appendix 1’.				
Clarification text	2.2.3 A template for local isolation instructions is set out in Appendix A.				

AMENDMENTS AND CLARIFICATIONS TO CURRENT DOCUMENTS

☒ Amendment ☐ Clarification (For definitions see the Standards Manual - Part 2)					
Document number	GM/RT2142	Document issue no.	3	Document issue date	August 2009
Document title	Resistance of Railway Vehicles to Roll-Over in Gales				
Clause number / Document location	Appendix A, B and C equation 4 Appendix B equation 8				
Original text	$v_a = \sqrt{\dfrac{M_R}{\frac{1}{2} \cdot \rho \cdot A \cdot H \cdot \overline{C}_{R,raw}(\beta)}}$ equation 4 $M_A = \frac{1}{2} \cdot \rho \cdot v_a^2 \cdot A \cdot H \cdot \overline{C}_{R,raw}(\beta)$ equation 8				
Reason for Amendment	Inconsistent terminology in formulae				
Amendment text	The formulae shown in Appendix A, B and C equation 4 and Appendix B equation 8 has the reference $\overline{C}_{R,raw}(\beta)$ which is used in GM/RC2542 issue 1 This is the equivalent to $C_{Mx,lee}(\beta)$ Aerodynamic rolling moment coefficient about the lee rail which is used elsewhere in the document. $v_a = \sqrt{\dfrac{M_R}{\frac{1}{2} \cdot \rho \cdot A \cdot H \cdot C_{Mx,lee}(\beta)}}$ equation 4 $M_A = \frac{1}{2} \cdot \rho \cdot v_a^2 \cdot A \cdot H \cdot C_{Mx,lee}(\beta)$ equation 8				

AMENDMENTS AND CLARIFICATIONS TO CURRENT DOCUMENTS

Document number	GM/RT2149	Document issue	3	Document issue date	February 2003
Title:	Requirements for Defining and Maintaining the Size of Railway Vehicles				
Section:	B		Clause number	B7.4 and B13.1.2.b	
Revision of amendment text:	This clarification of the standard was issued in the April 2009 catalogue and is unchanged from that issue. Note that the title of the research project was incorrect and has now been amended.				
Amendment text	Aggregation of tolerances and allowances in gauging GM/RT2149, issue 3 states (B13.1.2.b) that the data to be provided for the purposes of defining the swept envelope shall include 'an indication and justification of the worst cases considered in determining the swept envelopes, supported by a probability analysis of the cases considered in selecting the significant worst case(s)'. GM/RT2149 further states (B7.4) that 'in determining the swept envelopes, the full range of all relevant clearances, deflections and movements shall be determined. The worst case scenarios and probability of occurrence shall then be identified, taking account of normal and failure conditions of operation, and those having a statistically significant probability of occurrence shall be included in the appropriate swept envelope'. GM/RT2149 makes no specific references to tolerances and allowances, nor the means of aggregation. Uncertainty analysis provides a suitable probability analysis. Uncertainty analysis considers both the range of tolerances and allowances, and their probability of occurrence to determine the values that should be used to provide a given level of statistically certainty, and hence risk. For information on the application of uncertainty analysis to rolling stock refer to RSSB project T670 (Investigation of the accumulative effect of vehicle tolerances on gauging). http:/www.rssb.co.uk/Proj_popup.asp?TNumber=670				

☒ Amendment	☐ Clarification (For definitions see the Standards Manual - Part 2)				
Document number	GM/RT2162	Document issue no.	3	Document issue date	June 2011
Document title	Traincrew Access to and Egress from Railway Vehicles				
Clause number / Document location	1.3				
Original text	1.1.1 The content of this document was approved by Rolling Stock Standards Committee on 17-18 February2011. 1.1.2 This document will be authorised by RSSB on 18 April 2011 [proposed].				
Reason for Amendment	Incorrect numbering and deletion of 'proposed'.				
Amendment text	1.3.1 The content of this document was approved by Rolling Stock Standards Committee on 17-18 February 2011. 1.3.2 This document will be authorised by RSSB on 18 April 2011.				

AMENDMENTS AND CLARIFICATIONS TO CURRENT DOCUMENTS

Document number	GM/GN2169	Document issue	1	Document issue date	April 2007
Title:	Combined Manual for AWS and TPWS Trainborne Equipment				
Section:	Appendix N AWS testing using STS TY287 tester	Clause number	N/A		
Amendment text	In list of contents (page 139) add '(See Appendix P)' after the entries: Fore and aft positions for various AWS receiver designs Specification Example of AWS receiver sensitivity table Description of fault codes Illustration of parts and connection details				
Section:	Appendix P Fore and aft positions for AWS receivers				
Amendment text	Title of Appendix P to read 'Additional information relevant to Appendix N' (Appendix P should be read as a continuation of Appendix N). Page 141 reference to 'Annex P' should be to 'Appendix P'. Page 142 reference to 'Annex P' should be to 'Appendix P'. Reference to 'Annex P1' should be to 'Appendix P'. Page 144 reference to 'Annex Q.5' should be to 'Appendix P'. Reference to 'Annex Q.2' should be to 'Appendix P'.				
Section:	Appendix O AWS testing using Unipart Rail test equipment				
Amendment text	Page 146 reference to 'N4 to N13' should be to 'O4 to O13'.				

AMENDMENTS AND CLARIFICATIONS TO CURRENT DOCUMENTS

☒ Amendment	☐ Clarification (For definitions see the Standards Manual - Part 2)				
Document number	GM/RT2176	Document issue no.	One	Document issue date	December 1995
Document title	Air Quality and Lighting Environment Inside Railway Vehicles				
Clause number / Document location	6.1, 6.2				
Original text	6 Lighting 6.1. Adequate lighting shall be provided in all areas and passageways used by traincrew so that they can carry out their operational duties safely, under both normal and emergency conditions. Lighting levels in traincrew areas shall be sufficient to allow effective control of train safety and emergency systems and equipment, and enable associated signs and notices to be read, in accordance with references [2] and [3]. Lighting levels in traincrew areas shall also be sufficient to permit safe access to and egress from vehicles in accordance with reference [4]. Lighting of drivers' controls and instruments shall be in accordance with reference [5]. 6.2 Normal Lighting 6.2.1. The minimum Illuminance for vehicles in service operation shall be 20 Lux, with a minimum Uniformity of Illuminance of 0.67. This shall be measured at floor level and shall exclude the effect of light entering a vehicle from outside. Areas to be lit shall include aisles, doorways, vestibules, egress points, interconnecting gangways, corridors and toilets. 6.2.2. The vehicle lighting system shall be arranged to ensure that the lighting level quoted in Clause 6.2.1 is reliably available.				
Reason for Amendment	The withdrawal of these requirements (out of scope - the responsibility of the railway undertakings) was consulted on as part of the work on Vehicle Fire, Safety and Evacuation, which resulted in the publication of GM/RT2130 issue one. The impact assessment for GM/RT2130 issue one addresses the withdrawal of these requirements. This was approved by Rolling Stock Standards Committee on 04 April 2008, minute number 08/RST/04/121 refers. However GM/RT2176 was not re-issued.				
Amendment	None				

AMENDMENTS AND CLARIFICATIONS TO CURRENT DOCUMENTS

☒ Amendment	☐ Clarification (For definitions see the Standards Manual - Part 2)				
Document number	GM/RT2176	Document issue no.	One	Document issue date	December 1995
Document title	Air Quality and Lighting Environment Inside Railway Vehicles				
Clause number / Document location	6.3				
Original text	6.3 Emergency Lighting 6.3.1. The minimum illuminance at vehicle egress points in an emergency situation shall be 20 Lux at floor level. 6.3.2. The minimum illuminance on escape routes other than those specified in Clause 6.3.1 shall be 5 Lux at floor level. 6.3.3. The minimum illuminance on emergency equipment provided to assist in egress from a vehicle shall be 20 Lux. 6.3.4. The emergency lighting levels specified above shall be available for at least 1½ hours after failure of the vehicle's primary power source.				
Reason for Amendment	The withdrawal of these requirements was consulted on as part of the work on Vehicle Fire, Safety and Evacuation, which resulted in the publication of GM/RT2130 issue one. The impact assessment for GM/RT2130 issue one clarified the difference between standby lighting and emergency lighting. The requirements in GM/RT2176 related to standby lighting and it is these requirements that have been withdrawn. GM/RT2130 includes reference to EN 13272:2001 for guidance on standby lighting. This was approved by Rolling Stock Standards Committee on 04 April 2008, minute number 08/RST/04/121 refers. However GM/RT2176 was not re-issued.				
Amendment	None				

AMENDMENTS AND CLARIFICATIONS TO CURRENT DOCUMENTS

☒ Amendment	☐ Clarification (For definitions see the Standards Manual - Part 2)				
Document number	GM/RT2400	Document issue no.	4	Document issue date	September 2011
Document title	Engineering Design of On-Track Machines				
Clause number / Document location	B.1.1 and B.2.1				
Original text	B.1.1 In working configuration the maximum wheel loads (Q_{max}) of the main wheels or auxiliary wheels in relation to the diameter of the wheel and the rail material are to be fixed by the following formula: – — with V_{head} = 1.1 d = worn wheel diameter limit (mm). σ_B = minimum resistance to tensile failure. (N/mm^2). B.2.1 For machines, notably railway cranes, of which the wheel loads shall be controlled in different work configurations by means of a device (for example device for limiting of overturning moment) which prevents the maximum value of the wheel load being exceeded. Wheel loads shall accord with the following formula: – — with Vhead = 1.1 d = worn wheel diameter limit (mm). σB= minimum resistance to tensile failure. (N/mm2).				
Reason for Amendment	The published document was turned from MS Word 2007 into PDF format using Adobe. However this does not process formulae correctly, leaving a blank. Alternative software has to be used to overcome this problem				
Amendment text	B.1.1 In working configuration the maximum wheel loads (Q_{max}) of the main wheels or auxiliary wheels in relation to the diameter of the wheel and the rail material are to be fixed by the following formula: $Q_{max} = 8.257 \ x \ 10^{-7} \ x \ \frac{d}{2} \left(\frac{\sigma_B}{V_{head}}\right)^2 \quad (kN)$ with V_{head} = 1.1 d = worn wheel diameter limit (mm). σ_B = minimum resistance to tensile failure. (N/mm^2). B.2.1 For machines, notably railway cranes, of which the wheel loads shall be controlled in different work configurations by means of a device (for example device for limiting of overturning moment) which prevents the maximum value of the wheel load being exceeded. Wheel loads shall accord with the following formula: $Q_{max} = 10.52 \ x \ 10^{-7} \ x \ \frac{d}{2} \left(\frac{\sigma_B}{V_{head}}\right)^2 \quad (kN)$ with Vhead = 1.1 d = worn wheel diameter limit (mm). σB= minimum resistance to tensile failure. (N/mm2).				

AMENDMENTS AND CLARIFICATIONS TO CURRENT DOCUMENTS

☒ Amendment	☐ Clarification (For definitions see the Standards Manual - Part 2)				
Document number	GM/RT2466	Document issue no.	3	Document issue date	February 2010
Document title	Railway Wheelsets				
Clause number / Document location	Appendix A				
Original text	A.1 Wheelset profile limits A.1.1 The dimensions shown below are the limits of wheel tread wear. A.1.1.2 The profiles for steam locomotives shall be defined by individual assessment, useful information is contained in MT276. A.1.1.3 The flange height and thickness dimensions shown in Table A.1 have been rounded from the dimensions derived from the profile drawings; where greater accuracy is required the dimensions and tolerances on the drawings shall be used.				
Reason for Amendment	Incorrect numbering.				
Amendment text	A.1 Wheelset profile limits A.1.1 The dimensions shown below are the limits of wheel tread wear. A.1.2 The profiles for steam locomotives shall be defined by individual assessment, useful information is contained in MT276. A.1.3 The flange height and thickness dimensions shown in Table A.1 have been rounded from the dimensions derived from the profile drawings; where greater accuracy is required the dimensions and tolerances on the drawings shall be used.				

☒ Amendment	☐ Clarification (For definitions see the Standards Manual - Part 2)				
Document number	GM/GN2685	Document issue no.	One	Document issue date	December 2010
Document title	Guidance on Lifting, Jacking, Recovery and Emergency Movement of Rail Vehicles				
Clause number / Document location	Throughout the document, including on the front cover				
Original text	All references to GM/RT2100 issue four				
Reason for Amendment	GM/RT2100 issue five has been published but no amendments were necessary to the supporting guidance. It is therefore appropriate to update only the references to GM/RT2100.				
Amendment text	GM/RT2100 issue five				

AMENDMENTS AND CLARIFICATIONS TO CURRENT DOCUMENTS

☒ Amendment ☐ Clarification (For definitions see the Standards Manual - Part 2)					
Document number	GM/GN2686	Document issue no.	One	Document issue date	December 2010
Document title	Guidance on Rail Vehicle Bodyshell, Bogie and Suspension Elements				
Clause number / Document location	Throughout the document, including on the front cover				
Original text	All references to GM/RT2100 issue four				
Reason for Amendment	GM/RT2100 issue five has been published but no amendments were necessary to the supporting guidance. It is therefore appropriate to update only the references to GM/RT2100.				
Amendment text	GM/RT2100 issue five				

☒ Amendment ☐ Clarification (For definitions see the Standards Manual - Part 2)					
Document number	GM/GN2687	Document issue no.	One	Document issue date	December 2010
Document title	Guidance on Rail Vehicle Interior Structures and Secondary Structural Elements				
Clause number / Document location	Throughout the document, including on the front cover				
Original text	All references to GM/RT2100 issue four				
Reason for Amendment	GM/RT2100 issue five has been published but no amendments were necessary to the supporting guidance. It is therefore appropriate to update only the references to GM/RT2100.				
Amendment text	GM/RT2100 issue five				

☒ Amendment ☐ Clarification (For definitions see the Standards Manual - Part 2)					
Document number	GM/GN2688	Document issue no.	One	Document issue date	December 2010
Document title	Guidance on the Structural Design of Rail Freight Wagons including Rail Tank Wagons				
Clause number / Document location	Throughout the document, including on the front cover				
Original text	All references to GM/RT2100 issue four				
Reason for Amendment	GM/RT2100 issue five has been published but no amendments were necessary to the supporting guidance. It is therefore appropriate to update only the references to GM/RT2100.				
Amendment text	GM/RT2100 issue five				

AMENDMENTS AND CLARIFICATIONS TO CURRENT DOCUMENTS

Document No:	GM/RT2472	Document Issue	1	Document issue date	June 2002
Title:	Data Recorders on Trains – Design Requirements				
Section:	Part B	Clause No	B4.2	f)	
Amendment text	Currently, the clause requires that data recorders fitted to existing trains permit the recording of a list of items including: 'DRA' This item should read: Activation of the driver's reminder appliance (DRA)				

Document number	GM/RT2483	Document issue	1	Document issue date	June 2004
Title:	Visibility Requirements for Trains				
Section:	Appendix 3		Clause number	3.1 (p.15) and 3.2 (p.16)	
Amendment text	A Non-Compliance pending Railway Group Standard Revision (ref 04/235/NC) has been issued on behalf of all Duty Holders who have responsibilities under this RGS to correct a drafting error. In addition, Non-Compliance (pending standards change) 03/184/NC should have been included in the document. Details of the revisions are as detailed below; On page 15, table 2, row 2, 1,200 should be replaced by 1,400 On page 16, table 5, row 2, 400 should be replaced by 550				

Document number	GM/RT2483	Document issue	1	Document issue date	August 2004
Title:	Visibility Requirements for Trains				
Section:	Part A Whole document		Clause number	A1 and header	
Amendment text	The date shown in A1 Issue record should read 'August 2004'. The date shown in the header should read 'August 2004'.				

Document number	GM/GN2575	Document issue	2	Document issue date	2 June 2004
Title:	Guidance on the Engineering Acceptance of On-Track Machines				
Section:	Appendix 23		Clause number	Page 119,	Line 10.3
Amendment text	Evidence Column presently reads 'not applicable (for information only)'. This should read 'Calculations to prove compliance'.				

AMENDMENTS AND CLARIFICATIONS TO CURRENT DOCUMENTS

☐ Amendment ☒ Clarification (For definitions see the Standards Manual - Part 2)					
Document number	GO/RT3215	Document issue no.	2	Document issue date	June 2010
Document title	Requirements for the Weekly Operating Notice, Periodical Operating Notice and Sectional Appendix				
Clause number / Document location	Appendix C, clause C.1.1.10				
Original text	C.1.1.10: Radio system and channel; channel change points to be shown.				
Reason for Clarification	The current wording in C.1.1.10 is a generic statement which considers CSR and NRN, but needs to be amended to incorporate GSM-R.				
Clarification text	C.1.1.10 Radio system, registration and / or channel information; transition points between radio systems and/or channels to be shown.				

☒ Amendment ☐ Clarification (For definitions see the Standards Manual - Part 2)					
Document number	GO/RT3279	Document issue no.	7	Document issue date	September 2012
Document title	High Visibility Clothing				
Clause number / Document location	Appendix A – A.3				
Original text	A.3 Retro-reflective material characteristics A.3.1 The photometric and physical performance requirements for the retro-reflective material shall conform to the requirements stipulated in BS EN 471:2003 + A1:2007, Section 6, Table 5.				
Reason for Amendment	Please note a typographic correction to item A.3.1, which currently reads as ‘Table 5’ when it should read ‘Table 4’ (RSSB has added the name of the referenced table to make the typo correction clearer).				
Amendment text	A.3 Retro-reflective material characteristics A.3.1 The photometric and physical performance requirements for the retro-reflective material shall conform to the requirements stipulated in BS EN 471:2003 + A1:2007, Section 6, Table 4 for separate performance material, level 2.’				

AMENDMENTS AND CLARIFICATIONS TO CURRENT DOCUMENTS

☒ Amendment ☐ Clarification (For definitions see the Standards Manual - Part 2)					
Document number	RIS-3701-TOM	Document issue no.	1	Document issue date	June 2010
Document title	Rail Industry Standard for a Confidential Reporting System for Rail Staff				
Clause number / Document location	1.2.1				
Original text	Provision of a trial confidential reporting system began in Scotland in 1996. The Uff Inquiry into the 1997 Southall Accident gave strong endorsement to an industry-wide reporting system, which was further supported by the Rail Summit in October 1999 chaired by the then Deputy Prime Minister, Rt Hon John Prescott MP. The trials of the Confidential Information Reporting Analysis System (CIRAS) in Scotland were considered successful, and availability was extended to cover England and Wales in 2000. Since that time CIRAS, operated by RSSB, has come to occupy an established position within the wider rail industry. The body of safety intelligence acquired has, while preserving the anonymity of reporters, enabled lessons to be learned for wider application, for example through rules and procedural changes.				
Reason for Amendment	The expanded title of CIRAS is incorrect (it refers to Confidential Information Reporting Analysis System, but the correct title is Confidential Incident Reporting and Analysis System).				
Amendment text	Provision of a trial confidential reporting system began in Scotland in 1996. The Uff Inquiry into the 1997 Southall Accident gave strong endorsement to an industry-wide reporting system, which was further supported by the Rail Summit in October 1999 chaired by the then Deputy Prime Minister, Rt Hon John Prescott MP. The trials of the Confidential Incident Reporting and Analysis System (CIRAS) in Scotland were considered successful, and availability was extended to cover England and Wales in 2000. Since that time CIRAS, operated by RSSB, has come to occupy an established position within the wider rail industry. The body of safety intelligence acquired has, while preserving the anonymity of reporters, enabled lessons to be learned for wider application, for example through rules and procedural changes.				

AMENDMENTS AND CLARIFICATIONS TO CURRENT DOCUMENTS

Document number	GC/RT5212	Document issue	1	Document issue date	February 2003
Title:	Requirements for Defining and Maintaining Clearances				
Section:	D		Clause number	D1.1	
Revision of amended text:	This clarification of the standard was issued in the April 2009 catalogue and is unchanged from that issue. Note that the title of the research project was incorrect and has now been amended.				
Amendment text	Aggregation of tolerances and allowances in gauging GC/RT5212 (D1.1) requires the effective position of the track (used to determine clearances) to be adjusted for accuracy of measurement and track tolerances. Although accuracy of measurement is often specified as a single value, this would have been derived from a statistical distribution, and the standard (D2) does not preclude the use of such a statistically generated value. Track tolerances specified in GC/RT5212 are deemed to be the maximum that may occur (D3). No reference is made to the aggregation of these tolerances (except in the case of intervals between adjacent tracks where a 25% aggregation reduction has been permitted), but they have historically been applied additively. Uncertainty analysis considers both the range of tolerances and allowances, and their probability of occurrence to determine the values that should be used to provide a given level of statistical certainty, and hence risk for both individual tracks and the relationship between adjacent tracks. For information on the application of uncertainty analysis to the infrastructure refer to RSSB project T373 (Reducing uncertainty in structure gauging). http:/www.rssb.co.uk/Proj_popup.asp?TNumber=373 It is recommended that, at the commencement of a project, the values and combinations of values used in this approach should be agreed with the relevant parties.				

AMENDMENTS AND CLARIFICATIONS TO CURRENT DOCUMENTS

☒ Amendment ☐ Clarification (For definitions see the Standards Manual - Part 2)					
Document number	GI/RT7016	Document issue no.	4	Document issue date	December 2010
Document title	Interface between Station Platforms, Track and Trains				
Clause number / Document location	11.2.3.2 and References				
Original text	Section 11.2.3.2: *The SRA code of practice 'Train and Station Services for Disabled Passengers' sets out requirements for the tactile surface.* Other References: *Train and Station Services for Disabled Passengers: A Code of Practice, Strategic Rail Authority, London, February 2002*				
Reason for Amendment	The Strategic Rail Authority Code of Practice has been superseded by the Department for Transport Code of Practice entitled: 'Accessible Train and Station Design for Disabled People: A Code of Practice'.				
Amendment text	Section 11.2.3.2: The Department for Transport document 'Accessible Train and Station Design for Disabled People: A Code of Practice' sets out requirements for the tactile surface. Other References: Delete: 'Train and Station Services for Disabled Passengers: A Code of Practice, Strategic Rail Authority, London, February 2002' Insert: 'Accessible Train and Station Design for Disabled People: A Code of Practice' Note: The Department for Transport Code of Practice references the document 'Guidance on the Use of Tactile Paving Surfaces' which is also published by the Department for Transport.				

☒ Amendment ☐ Clarification (For definitions see the Standards Manual - Part 2)					
Document number	GI/RT7016	Document issue no.	4	Document issue date	December 2010
Document title	Interface between Station Platforms, Track and Trains				
Clause number / Document location	Appendix D: D.2.1.b)				
Original text	b) The provision of marked safe areas for the use of waiting passengers.				
Reason for Amendment	RSSB research (T425) has shown that although the risk associated with the train slipstream is small, the risk can have a significant effect if it is not effectively managed. Of the incidents reported (24 since 1972), the risk is mainly due to wheeled items on station platforms (pushchairs, wheelchairs, trolleys) that have been affected, but also passengers and their belongings. In the context of D.2.1.b) this could include waiting passengers and their belongings (including pushchairs, wheelchairs and luggage).				
Amendment text	b) The provision of marked safe areas for the use of waiting passengers and their belongings.				

AMENDMENTS AND CLARIFICATIONS TO CURRENT DOCUMENTS

☐ Amendment	☒ Clarification (For definitions see the Standards Manual - Part 2)				
Document number	GI/RT7016	Document issue no.	4	Document issue date	December 2010
Document title	Interface between Station Platforms, Track and Trains				
Clause number / Document location	10.3.1, 10.3.2 and 10.3.3				
Original text	Vertical plane illuminance towards an observer viewing parallel to the platform edge 10.3.1 'There shall be a minimum illuminance of 2 lux measured vertically at a point 1.0m above the platform surface and perpendicular to the platform edge.' 10.3.2 'At driver only operation stations (DOO) using mirrors and driver line of sight only, there shall be a minimum illuminance of 6 lux measured vertically at a point of 1.0 m above the platform surface and perpendicular to the platform edge area, along the extent of the platform length to which DOO applies.' 10.3.3 'The required value shall be achieved at a point of 0.3 m back from the platform edge and opposite the first luminaire on the platform. The measurement point should be directed toward the driver or DOO observation equipment.'				
Reason for Clarification	In relation to the above requirements a clarification in the form of a diagram depicting the first luminaire on the platform is provided to illustrate that the higher illuminance values are required where reliance for safe dispatch is by mirrors, and by line of sight only. Where CCTV cameras and monitors are used, the equipment is required to be suitable for operation at the lower illuminance values, and the cameras will be aimed such that screen contrast is not impaired by glare from luminaires.				
Clarification text					

AMENDMENTS AND CLARIFICATIONS TO CURRENT DOCUMENTS

☒ Amendment	☐ Clarification (For definitions see the Standards Manual - Part 2)				
Document number	GI/RT7033	Document issue no.	2	Document issue date	October 2009
Document title	Lineside Operational Safety Signs				
Clause number / Document location	Appendix C Specification of signs for the public / Sign CC09z - Instructions for use at a crossing with Miniature Red/Green Lights and User-operated Gates				
Original text					
Reason for Amendment	The word 'both' is missing at point 5 in this sign. This was an omission and is required by The Private Crossings (Signs and Barriers) Regulations 1996 – diagram 109.				
Amendment text	Instructions 1. Check that green light shows 2. Open both gates 3. Check that green light still shows 4. Cross quickly 5. Close both gates				

AMENDMENTS AND CLARIFICATIONS TO CURRENT DOCUMENTS

☒ Amendment ☐ Clarification (For definitions see the Standards Manual - Part 2)					
Document number	GI/RT7033	Document issue no.	2	Document issue date	October 2009
Document title	Lineside Operational Safety Signs				
Clause number / Document location	Appendix A				
Original text	On signs AB01, AB02 and AB03 the figure on the left reads 500. On sign AC11 the figure on the left reads 340.				
Reason for Amendment	The total side length dimensions stated on the left and right sides of signs AB01, AB02, AB03 and AC11 are different but should be identical. The correct length is shown for each sign in all four cases on their respective right side.				
Amendment text	Sign AB01 - the arrow on the left should reach the top limit marker and the figure should read 540. Signs AB02 and AB03 - the figure on the left of the sign should read 540. Sign AC11 - the figure on the left of the sign should read 339.				

☒ Amendment ☐ Clarification (For definitions see the Standards Manual - Part 2)					
Document number	GIRT7033	Document issue no.	Two	Document issue date	October 2009
Document title	Lineside Operational Safety Signs				
Clause number / Document location	Synopsis (front cover of standard and rgsonline summary text)				
Original text	Synopsis This document mandates the arrangements for the management and specification of lineside operational safety signs in order to provide consistency of form and presentation throughout the network. This document contains requirements that are amended under the Railway Group Standards Code (Issue Three) as a small scale change. Reference to the amended requirements is made in the 'Issue record'. All other parts of the document are unchanged from the previous issue.				
Reason for Amendment	Some of the images in the standard have been found to be indistinct in appearance, resulting from incorrect production of the PDF. Issue three of this standard is in the process of being re-drafted. Therefore, rather than reissuing the standard, users of the document are advised to contact RSSB for clear versions of the images, as needed. This amendment is made in consideration of the associated time and cost for industry and RSSB to process and publish a revised document. Issue three of the standard will rectify the image quality.				
Amendment text	Synopsis Please note images of some signs appear indistinct in this document. Clear images of the signs are available from RSSB upon request (via enquirydesk@rssb.co.uk). Issue three of the standard, currently under development, will rectify the image quality. This document mandates the arrangements for the management and specification of lineside operational safety signs in order to provide consistency of form and presentation throughout the network. This document contains requirements that are amended under the Railway Group Standards Code (Issue Three) as a small scale change. Reference to the amended requirements are made in the 'Issue record'. All other parts of the document are unchanged from the previous issue.				

AMENDMENTS AND CLARIFICATIONS TO CURRENT DOCUMENTS

☒ Amendment ☐ Clarification (For definitions see the Standards Manual - Part 2)					
Document number	GE/RT8000-ERTMS AM	Document issue no.	One	Document issue date	October 2009
Document title	ERTMS Amendments module				
Clause number / Document location	Front page				
Original text	ERTMS Amendments module				
Reason for Amendment	All text in G1 sections 11.2 and 11.7 (pages 10-13 inclusive) All text in G2 (pages 14-15 inclusive) All text in M1, M2 and M4 (pages 17-43 inclusive) All text in OTP (pages 46-47 inclusive) All text in T1A sections 1.2 and 1.4 (pages 74-75 and 78-79) All text in T1B sections 1.5, 1.6, 2.2, 6a, 11.3, 12.1, 12.2, 12.3, 13.2, 18 (pages 84-101 inclusive) All text in T5 (pages 102-105 inclusive) All text in T6 (pages 106-115 inclusive) All text in T7 (pages 116-133 inclusive) All text in T9 (pages 134-139 inclusive) All text in T12 (pages 136-155 inclusive) All text in TS1 (pages 156-213 inclusive) All text in TS9 (pages 214-257 inclusive) All text in TW1 section 16.1 (page 275) All text in TW7 (pages 298-305) of this document have been affected by the publication of GE/RT8000 Rule Book Amendments to ERTMS Modules Issue 6 (Ref NS-ERTMS-OPS-0012).				
Amendment text	ERTMS Amendments module Attention: Parts of the content of this document have been affected by the publication of supplement GE/RT8000 Rule Book Amendments to ERTMS Modules Issue 6 (Ref NS-ERTMS-OPS-0012). Please refer to that supplement for the details – it can be found electronically by clicking here. http://www.rssb.co.uk/EXPERTISE/Pages/ERTMS.aspx.				

AMENDMENTS AND CLARIFICATIONS TO CURRENT DOCUMENTS

☒ Amendment ☐ Clarification (For definitions see the Standards Manual - Part 2)					
Document number	GE/RT8000-P2 ERTMS	Document issue no.	One	Document issue date	October 2009
Document title	Working single and bi-directional ERTMS lines by pilotman				
Clause number / Document location	Front page				
Original text	Working single and bi-directional ERTMS lines by pilotman				
Reason for Amendment	All of the content has been affected by the publication of GE/RT8000 Rule Book Amendments to ERTMS Modules Issue 6 (Ref NS-ERTMS-OPS-0012).				
Amendment text	Working single and bi-directional ERTMS lines by pilotman Attention: the content of this document has been affected by the publication of supplement GE/RT8000 Rule Book Amendments to ERTMS Modules Issue 6 (Ref NS-ERTMS-OPS-0012). Please refer to that supplement for the details – it can be found electronically by clicking here. http://www.rssb.co.uk/EXPERTISE/Pages/ERTMS.aspx.				

☒ Amendment ☐ Clarification (For definitions see the Standards Manual - Part 2)					
Document number	GE/RT8000-S5 ERTMS	Document issue no.	One	Document issue date	October 2009
Document title	Passing an end of authority (EOA) without a movement authority (MA)				
Clause number / Document location	Front page				
Original text	Passing an end of authority (EOA) without a movement authority (MA)				
Reason for Amendment	Part A section 1.1 (circumstance 6) Part B sections 1 and 2 Part C section 2 of this document have been affected by the publication of GE/RT8000 Rule Book Amendments to ERTMS Modules Issue 6 (Ref NS-ERTMS-OPS-0012).				
Amendment text	Passing an end of authority (EOA) without a movement authority (MA) Attention: Parts of the content of this document have been affected by the publication of supplement GE/RT8000 Rule Book Amendments to ERTMS Modules Issue 6 (Ref NS-ERTMS-OPS-0012). Please refer to that supplement for the details – it can be found electronically by clicking here. http://www.rssb.co.uk/EXPERTISE/Pages/ERTMS.aspx.				

AMENDMENTS AND CLARIFICATIONS TO CURRENT DOCUMENTS

☒ Amendment ☐ Clarification (For definitions see the Standards Manual - Part 2)					
Document number	GE/RT8000-S6 ERTMS	Document issue no.	One	Document issue date	October 2009
Document title	ERTMS cab signalling				
Clause number / Document location	Front page				
Original text	ERTMS cab signalling				
Reason for Amendment	All relevant text in: Section 3 Section 4.3 Written Order Nos 1-5 of this document have been affected by the publication of GE/RT8000 Rule Book Amendments to ERTMS Modules Issue 6 (Ref NS-ERTMS-OPS-0012).				
Amendment text	ERTMS cab signalling Attention: Parts of the content of this document have been affected by the publication of supplement GE/RT8000 Rule Book Amendments to ERTMS Modules Issue 6 (Ref NS-ERTMS-OPS-0012). Please refer to that supplement for the details – it can be found electronically by clicking here. http://www.rssb.co.uk/EXPERTISE/Pages/ERTMS.aspx				

☒ Amendment ☐ Clarification (For definitions see the Standards Manual - Part 2)					
Document number	GE/RT8000-T2 ERTMS	Document issue no.	One	Document issue date	October 2009
Document title	Protecting engineering work or a hand trolley on an ERTMS line not under possession				
Clause number / Document location	Front page				
Original text	Protecting engineering work or a hand trolley on an ERTMS line not under possession				
Reason for Amendment	All of the content has been affected by the publication of GE/RT8000 Rule Book Amendments to ERTMS Modules Issue 6 (Ref NS-ERTMS-OPS-0012).				
Amendment text	Protecting engineering work or a hand trolley on an ERTMS line not under possession Attention: the content of this document has been affected by the publication of supplement GE/RT8000 Rule Book Amendments to ERTMS Modules Issue 6 (Ref NS-ERTMS-OPS-0012). Please refer to that supplement for the details – it can be found electronically by clicking here. http://www.rssb.co.uk/EXPERTISE/Pages/ERTMS.aspx.				

AMENDMENTS AND CLARIFICATIONS TO CURRENT DOCUMENTS

☒ Amendment ☐ Clarification (For definitions see the Standards Manual - Part 2)					
Document number	GE/RT8000-T3 ERTMS	Document issue no.	One	Document issue date	October 2009
Document title	Possession of an ERTMS line for engineering work				
Clause number / Document location	Front page				
Original text	Possession of an ERTMS line for engineering work				
Reason for Amendment	All of the content has been affected by the publication of GE/RT8000 Rule Book Amendments to ERTMS Modules Issue 6 (Ref NS-ERTMS-OPS-0012).				
Amendment text	Possession of an ERTMS line for engineering work Attention: the content of this document has been affected by the publication of supplement GE/RT8000 Rule Book Amendments to ERTMS Modules Issue 6 (Ref NS-ERTMS-OPS-0012). Please refer to that supplement for the details – it can be found electronically by clicking here. http://www.rssb.co.uk/EXPERTISE/Pages/ERTMS.aspx.				

☒ Amendment ☐ Clarification (For definitions see the Standards Manual - Part 2)					
Document number	GE/RT8000-T11 ERTMS	Document issue no.	One	Document issue date	October 2009
Document title	Movement of engineering trains and on-track plant under T3 ERTMS arrangements				
Clause number / Document location	Front page				
Original text	Movement of engineering trains and on-track plant under T3 ERTMS arrangements				
Reason for Amendment	All of the content has been affected by the publication of GE/RT8000 Rule Book Amendments to ERTMS Modules Issue 6 (Ref NS-ERTMS-OPS-0012).				
Amendment text	Movement of engineering trains and on-track plant under T3 ERTMS arrangements Attention: the content of this document has been affected by the publication of supplement GE/RT8000 Rule Book Amendments to ERTMS Modules Issue 6 (Ref NS-ERTMS-OPS-0012). Please refer to that supplement for the details – it can be found electronically by clicking here. http://www.rssb.co.uk/EXPERTISE/Pages/ERTMS.aspx.				

AMENDMENTS AND CLARIFICATIONS TO CURRENT DOCUMENTS

☒ Amendment ☐ Clarification (For definitions see the Standards Manual - Part 2)					
Document number	GE/RT8000-TS10 ERTMS	Document issue no.	One	Document issue date	October 2009
Document title	ERTMS level 2 train signalling regulations				
Clause number / Document location	Front page				
Original text	ERTMS level 2 train signalling regulations				
Reason for Amendment	All of the content has been affected by the publication of GE/RT8000 Rule Book Amendments to ERTMS Modules Issue 6 (Ref NS-ERTMS-OPS-0012).				
Amendment text	ERTMS level 2 train signalling regulations Attention: the content of this document has been affected by the publication of supplement GE/RT8000 Rule Book Amendments to ERTMS Modules Issue 6 (Ref NS-ERTMS-OPS-0012). Please refer to that supplement for the details – it can be found electronically by clicking here. http://www.rssb.co.uk/EXPERTISE/Pages/ERTMS.aspx				

☒ Amendment ☐ Clarification (For definitions see the Standards Manual - Part 2)					
Document number	GE/RT8000-TW8 ERTMS	Document issue no.	One	Document issue date	February 2010
Document title	Level crossings on ERTMS lines				
Clause number / Document location	Front page				
Original text	Level crossings on ERTMS lines				
Reason for Amendment	All of the content has been affected by the publication of GE/RT8000 Rule Book Amendments to ERTMS Modules Issue 6 (Ref NS-ERTMS-OPS-0012).				
Amendment text	Level crossings on ERTMS lines Attention: the content of this document has been affected by the publication of supplement GE/RT8000 Rule Book Amendments to ERTMS Modules Issue 6 (Ref NS-ERTMS-OPS-0012). Please refer to that supplement for the details – it can be found electronically by clicking here. http://www.rssb.co.uk/EXPERTISE/Pages/ERTMS.aspx				

AMENDMENTS AND CLARIFICATIONS TO CURRENT DOCUMENTS

☒ Amendment ☐ Clarification (For definitions see the Standards Manual - Part 2)					
Document number	GE/RT8006	Document issue no.	2	Document issue date	September 2010
Document title	Assessment of Compatibility of Rail Vehicle Weights and Underline Bridges				
Clause number / Document location	Section B.3 Design mass under exceptional load, section B.3.9				
Original text	BS EN 5663:2009 states that *'The standing area is calculated with tip up seats and folding tables in closed position;.* Tip up seats should be treated as if they were not occupied by seated passengers, but that the space they would have occupied is part of the standing area, subject to standing passenger loading.				
Reason for Amendment	BS EN reference number given is incorrect.				
Amendment text	The BS EN reference number should be: BS EN 15663:2009				

☐ Amendment ☒ Clarification (For definitions see the Standards Manual - Part 2)					
Document number	GE/RT8025	Document issue no.	1	Document issue date	October 2001
Document title	Electrical Protective Provisions for Electrified Lines				
Clause number / Document location	All references to BS EN 50122-1				
Original text	All references to: "BS EN 50122-1"				
Reason for Clarification	A new revision of BS EN 50122-1 has been issued, BS EN 50122-1:2011 and the clauses referenced have changed in the new version. Revised Railway group standards GE/RT8096 (a.c. systems) and GE/RT8096 (d.c. systems) are being drafted and will reflect the requirements of BS EN 50122-1:2011.				
Clarification text	All references to: "BS EN 50122-1" to be considered as a reference to "BS EN 50122-1:1998"				

AMENDMENTS AND CLARIFICATIONS TO CURRENT DOCUMENTS

☐ Amendment ☒ Clarification (For definitions see the Standards Manual - Part 2)					
Document number	GE/RT8026	Document issue no.	1	Document issue date	December 2000
Document title	Safety Requirements for Cab Signalling Systems				
Clause number / Document location	9.3.12				
Original text	9.3.12 Operational Availability of Displays in Multi-Cab Trains It shall not be possible for the driver's MMI in more than one driving cab on a train to be operational at any one time.				
Reason for Clarification	As written, clause 9.3.12 is in conflict with the ETCS SRS (Chapter 4) mandated by the CCS TSIs, which requires more than one driver's MMI to be operational in a train when one or more traction units are operating, for instance in Non Leading mode. Also, when performing certain operations, such as shunting and, in particular, coupling two trains, there may be momentary circumstances where more than one driver's MMI can be operational. "Operational" in this context refers to use when driving, it does not refer to whether the driver's MMI is functional.				
Clarification	Clause 9.3.12 does not apply when an ETCS-fitted non-leading traction unit is operating in ETCS non-leading (NL) mode and supervision is being provided by another traction unit in the train consist. The words "at any one time" in clause 9.3.12 should be interpreted as excluding momentary circumstances where more than one driver's MMI may be operational, for example when performing shunting operations such as coupling two trains. "Operational" in this context refers to use when driving, it does not refer to whether the driver's MMI is functional.				

☐ Amendment ☒ Clarification (For definitions see the Standards Manual - Part 2)					
Document number	GE/RT8030	Document issue no.	4	Document issue date	December 2011
Document title	Requirements for the Train Protection and Warning System (TPWS)				
Clause number / Document location	H.1 SPAD alert, H.2 Overspeed alert and H.3 Self-test announcement.				
Original text	Whilst the text was correct, the sound files icons that were included in Appendix H of the document did not function correctly.				
Reason for Clarification	The sound files in the document that was originally uploaded onto www.rgsonline.co.uk were not functioning correctly. An amended version of the PDF file, with working sound files, was subsequently uploaded.				
Clarification text	Reloaded document has working sound files in Appendix H.				

AMENDMENTS AND CLARIFICATIONS TO CURRENT DOCUMENTS

☐ Amendment	☒ Clarification (For definitions see the Standards Manual - Part 2)				
Document number	GE/RT8030	Document issue no.	4	Document issue date	December 2011
Document title	Requirements for the Train Protection and Warning System (TPWS)				
Clause number / Document location	Superseded documents (page 2), 3.1.3.1 and 3.2.3.1.				
Original text	Superseded documents - GE/RT8030, issue three, Requirements for the Train Protection and Warning System (TPWS), ceases to be in force and is withdrawn as of 03 March 2012. 3.1.3.1 - This Railway Group Standard comes into force and is to be complied with from 03 March 2012. 3.2.3.1 - This Railway Group Standard comes into force and is to be complied with from 03 March 2012.				
Reason for Clarification	An incorrect compliance date was inadvertedly included in a version of issue four when the sound files were found to not be working and it was reloaded onto www.rgsonline.co.uk. The correct version is now on www.rgsonline.co.uk. The correct compliance date is 01 December 2012.				
Clarification text	Superseded documents - GE/RT8030, issue three, Requirements for the Train Protection and Warning System (TPWS), ceases to be in force and is withdrawn as of 01 December 2012. 3.1.3.1 - This Railway Group Standard comes into force 03 March 2012 and is to be complied with from 01 December 2012. 3.2.3.1 - This Railway Group Standard comes into force 03 March 2012 and is to be complied with from 01 December 2012.				

Document number	GE/RT8046	Document issue	2	Document issue date	October 2007
Title:	Spoken Safety Communications				
Section:	References		Clause number	Documents referenced in the text	
Amendment text	Add the following document to the Railway Group Standards list: GE/GN8516 Guidance on recording and monitoring of safety communications				

AMENDMENTS AND CLARIFICATIONS TO CURRENT DOCUMENTS

☒ Amendment ☐ Clarification (For definitions see the Standards Manual - Part 2)					
Document numbers	GE/RT8060 GE/GN8560	Document issue nos.	2 1	Documents issue date	05 June 2010
Document titles	Engineering Requirements for Dispatch of Trains from Platforms Guidance on Engineering Requirements for Dispatch of Trains from Platforms				
Clause number / Document location	2.3.1.4, 2.4.1.4, 2.4.3.4 and the Definitions and abbreviations sections of both the Railway Group Standard and the Guidance Note.				
Original text	2.3.1.4 The size, location and orientation of the mirrors shall be such that the driver is able to see the required image. The tolerance for achieving this shall be for trains stopped in the range ± 1.0 m from the marked train stop location. 2.4.1.4 The size, location and orientation of the monitors shall be such that the driver or staff involved in train working is able to see the required image. The tolerance for achieving this shall be ± 1.0 m from the marked train stop location. 2.4.3.4 The optical properties of the system shall be capable of transmitting a faithful rendition of the viewed area.				
Reason for Amendment	The consistency between the documents RIS-3703-TOM issue one, Rail Industry Standard for Passenger Train Dispatch and Platform Safety Measures, and GE/RT8060 and GE/GN8560 was reviewed in the 12 month review of GE/RT8060 issue two and GE/GN8560 issue one. Amendments to GE/RT8060 and its associated guidance note (GE/GN8560) were identified to replace the terms '*required image'* and '*viewed area'* with '*dispatch corridor'* and cross reference a definition of dispatch corridor to RIS-3703-TOM. The amendment was approved by CCS SC on 22 September 2011.				
Amendment text	2.3.1.4 The size, location and orientation of the mirrors shall be such that the driver is able to see the dispatch corridor. The tolerance for achieving this shall be for trains stopped in the range ± 1.0 m from the marked train stop location. 2.4.1.4 The size, location and orientation of the monitors shall be such that the driver or staff involved in train working is able to see the dispatch corridor. The tolerance for achieving this shall be ± 1.0 m from the marked train stop location. 2.4.3.4 The optical properties of the system shall be capable of transmitting a faithful rendition of the dispatch corridor. Addition to Definitions and abbreviations sections: Dispatch corridor The corridor of space that must be visible in order to perform the train safety check (as set out in 2.2.1 of RIS-3703-TOM).				

AMENDMENTS AND CLARIFICATIONS TO CURRENT DOCUMENTS

☒ Amendment ☐ Clarification (For definitions see the Standards Manual - Part 2)					
Document number	GE/RT8064	Document issue no.	One	Document issue date	April 2003
Document title	European Train Control System: The Management of Packet 44				
Clause number / Document location	B4.1.1 (last clause – being the last paragraph)				
Original text	A Railway Group member with a use for packet 44 that is exclusive to its own needs (for example surveying points, depot functions) as set out in section B2.3.2 is able to apply to the UIC for another value of the parameter NID_XUSER.				
Reason for Amendment	The process to obtain new values of NID_XUSER is superseded by GE/RT8072, issue one, ERTMS National Identities Management which is published 03 March 2012 and comes into force 01 December 2012. GE/RT8072, issue one, clause 2.2.1 requires that the user now applies to the ERTMS National Identities Coordinator to request the allocation of new values.				
Amendment	The last paragraph of B4.1.1 is deleted, as of 01 December 2012 when GE/RT8072 issue one comes into force.				

☒ Amendment ☐ Clarification (For definitions see the Standards Manual - Part 2)					
Document number	GE/RT8072	Document issue no.	1	Document issue date	March 2012
Document title	ERTMS National Identities Management				
Clause number / Document location	Clause 1.2.2.1				
Original text	The ERTMS National Identities set within the scope of this document include, as a minimum, the following ERTMS variables: NID_C, NID_BG, NID_ENGINE, NID_MN, NID_KMC, NID_RADIO, NID_RBC, NID_LOOP, NID_RIU, NID_STM and NID_XUSER.				
Reason for Amendment	Error, NID_ENGINE management arrangements changed during development of the standards package and this was not reflected in the scope. It is, however clearly explained in clause GN9 of associated guidance note GE/GN8672.				
Amendment text	The ERTMS National Identities set within the scope of this document include, as a minimum, the following ERTMS variables: NID_C, NID_BG, NID_MN, NID_KMC, NID_RADIO, NID_RBC, NID_LOOP, NID_RIU, NID_STM and NID_XUSER.				

AMENDMENTS AND CLARIFICATIONS TO CURRENT DOCUMENTS

☐ Amendment ☒ Clarification (For definitions see the Standards Manual - Part 2)					
Document number	GE/RT8080	Document issue no.	1	Document issue date	December 2003
Document title	Train Radio Systems for Voice and Related Messaging Communications				
Clause number / Document location	5.2.9				
Original text	Only one train radio shall be operational at any one time.				
Reason for Clarification	On 10 June 2010 CCS Standards Committee considered derogation application 10/079/DGN and minute number 10/CCS/06/093 noted that clause 5.2.9: “refers to driver and signaller use of the train radio, not whether the radios are functional.”				
Clarification	Clause 5.2.9 concerns operational use by the driver and signaller of the train radio and not whether multiple radios are functional.				

Document number	GE/RT8250	Document issue	2	Document issue date June 2007
Title:	Reporting High Risk Defects			
Section:	Part 2		Clause number	2.1.1.2
Amendment text	The second sentence of the clause is ‘This is especially important where common systems such as AWS and TPWS are involved.’ Following the introduction of ETCS and GSM-R, these systems should be classed as ‘common systems’ for the purposes of this clause.			

AMENDMENTS AND CLARIFICATIONS TO CURRENT DOCUMENTS

Document number	GE/RT8270	Document issue	2	Document issue date	October 2007
Title:	Assessment of Compatibility of Rolling Stock and Infrastructure				
Section:	2.5 Review of assessment of compatibility	Clause number	2.5.7		
Amendment text	The term 'the railway industry's accepted processes', used in section 2.5.7 of GE/RT8270, principally refers to the process set out in 'A guide to ROGS requirements for duty of co-operation between transport operators', published by RSSB in October 2007. However, the term 'the railway industry's accepted processes' was chosen to be deliberately accommodating of other processes which might, in certain circumstances, be an appropriate method of resolving issues about compatibility - for example, using Standards Committees or System Interface Committees. The relevant sections of the Guide are Section B6 of Part 1 and Section B6 of Part 2 (Escalation of safety concerns). Section B6 of Part 1 states: 'Most safety issues can be resolved via established cooperative processes. However, in a small number of cases, where this is not possible, the industry has developed an additional process. The issue of escalation of safety concerns has been allocated a separate section in this guide as it is probably the most important area of cooperation that does not have an established practice in place. The later documentation of this will be a priority for RSSB but, in the meantime, Appendix B6 contains significant guidance that transport operators should apply.' A copy of 'A guide to ROGS requirements for duty of co-operation between transport operators' is available on the RSSB web site (www.rssb.co.uk).				

☒ Amendment	☐ Clarification (For definitions see the Standards Manual - Part 2)				
Document number	GE/RT8217	Document issue no.	3	Document issue date	December 2009
Document title	Introduction and Use of Axle Counters - Managing the Risk				
Clause number / Document location	Section 1.2.3.1 and 'References'				
Original text	Section 1.2.3.1: GK/RT0011 Train Detection and GK/RT0217 Technical Requirements for Axle Counters ' References': GK/RT0011 Train Detection and GK/RT0217 Technical Requirements for Axle Counters				
Reason for Amendment	At the 12 month review of the document, it was noted that references to GK/RT0011 Train Detection and GK/RT0217 Technical Requirements for Axle Counters (in Section 1.2.3.1 and under 'References') needed to be replaced by GK/RT0028 Infrastructure Based Train Detection Interface Requirements.				
Amendment text	Section 1.2.3.1: GK/RT0028 Infrastructure Based Train Detection Interface Requirements ' References': GK/RT0028 Infrastructure Based Train Detection Interface Requirements				

AMENDMENTS AND CLARIFICATIONS TO CURRENT DOCUMENTS

☒ Amendment	☐ Clarification (For definitions see the Standards Manual - Part 2)				
Document number	GE/GN8578	Document issue no.	2	Document issue date	September 2011
Document title	Guidance on the Use of Satellite Navigation				
Clause number / Document location	Issue record / Comments				
Original text	Small scale change amendment to include new section 6.4.2.9, and change to colour coding in Figure 3. Also, new Appendix D – Locator Interface Specification				
Reason for Amendment	Further Clarification				
Amendment text	Small scale change amendment to include, changes in section 6.4.2.8 and new section 6.4.2.9, and change to colour coding in Figure 3. Also, new Appendix D – Locator Interface Specification				

Document number	GE/GN8579	Document issue	1	Document issue date	June 2008
Title:	Guidance on Digital Wireless Technology for Train Operators				
Section:	Part 2		Clause number	2.6	
Amendment text	Part 2.6: Add ‘as VOIP does not have a high bandwidth’ after the sentence ending with ‘noticed by a voice application’.				
Section:	Part 8		Clause number	8.1	
Amendment text	Part 8.1: Replace ‘normally made next to sensitive equipment’ with ‘normally made close to the sensitive equipment’. Delete the sentence beginning with ‘This is a failing with…’. Add ‘Failure to do this is a common weakness of COTS equipment’ to after the sentence beginning with ‘Good practice requires…’.				

AMENDMENTS AND CLARIFICATIONS TO CURRENT DOCUMENTS

☒ Amendment	☐ Clarification (For definitions see the Standards Manual - Part 2)				
Document number	GE/GN8672	Document issue no.	1	Document issue date	March 2012
Document title	Guidance on ERTMS National Identities Management				
Clause number / Document location	Clause 1.1.4, Clause 1.2.1, Clause 1.1.5, Clause 1.1.6 and Clause 1.1.7				
Original text	1.1.4 The GB ERTMS National Identities set within the scope of GE/RT8072 include the following ERTMS variables: NID_C, NID_BG, NID_ENGINE, NID_MN, NID_KMC, NID_RADIO, NID_RBC, NID_LOOP, NID_RIU, NID_STM and NID_XUSER. 1.2.1 The requirements in GE/RT8072 apply to any new ERTMS National Identities that might be introduced in the future. 1.1.5 Subset-054 sets out the European Railway Agency process for the management of variables. The version cited in legislation at the time of publication of this Guidance Note is v2.0.0, but later versions are known to exist (up to at least v2.0.6 and possibly v2.1.0). 1.1.6 ERA_ERTMS_040001 sets out the ranges of values allocated in accordance with Subset-054. 1.1.7 Subset-054 and ERA_ERTMS_040001 set out the following additional variables: M_LOADINGGAUGE, M_TRACTION, NC_TRAIN, Q_TEXT which are not included in the scope of this document because they are not national identities.				
Reason for Amendment	The clause numbering is incorrect and needs to be amended.				
Amendment text	1.2.1 The GB ERTMS National Identities set within the scope of GE/RT8072 include the following ERTMS variables: NID_C, NID_BG, NID_ENGINE, NID_MN, NID_KMC, NID_RADIO, NID_RBC, NID_LOOP, NID_RIU, NID_STM and NID_XUSER. 1.2.2 The requirements in GE/RT8072 apply to any new ERTMS National Identities that might be introduced in the future. 1.2.3 Subset-054 sets out the European Railway Agency process for the management of variables. The version cited in legislation at the time of publication of this Guidance Note is v2.0.0, but later versions are known to exist (up to at least v2.0.6 and possibly v2.1.0). 1.2.4 ERA_ERTMS_040001 sets out the ranges of values allocated in accordance with Subset-054. 1.2.5 Subset-054 and ERA_ERTMS_040001 set out the following additional variables: M_LOADINGGAUGE, M_TRACTION, NC_TRAIN, Q_TEXT which are not included in the scope of this document because they are not national identities.				

☒ Amendment	☐ Clarification (For definitions see the Standards Manual - Part 2)				
Document number	GE/GN8672	Document issue no.	1	Document issue date	March 2012
Document title	Guidance on ERTMS National Identities Management				
Clause number / Document location	Existing clause number 1.1.4 (Note: Amendment 8672 Iss 1 AM001 corrects this clause number to read 1.2.1).				
Original text	The ERTMS National Identities set within the scope of this document include, as a minimum, the following ERTMS variables: NID_C, NID_BG, NID_ENGINE, NID_MN, NID_KMC, NID_RADIO, NID_RBC, NID_LOOP, NID_RIU, NID_STM and NID_XUSER.				
Reason for Amendment	Error, NID_ENGINE management arrangements changed during development of the standards package and this was not reflected in the scope. It is, however clearly explained in clause GN9 of this guidance note.				
Amendment text	The ERTMS National Identities set within the scope of this document include, as a minimum, the following ERTMS variables: NID_C, NID_BG, NID_MN, NID_KMC, NID_RADIO, NID_RBC, NID_LOOP, NID_RIU, NID_STM and NID_XUSER.				

AMENDMENTS AND CLARIFICATIONS TO CURRENT DOCUMENTS

☒ Amendment ☐ Clarification (For definitions see the Standards Manual - Part 2)					
Document number	RGSC 02	Document issue no.	2	Document issue date	5 December 2009
Document title	Standards Manual				
Clause number / Document location	12.4.6b				
Original text	Fully update the published Standards Catalogue at least once every two months.				
Reason for Amendment	On 12 February 2010, ISCC approved the proposal that Railway Group Standards should be published on a quarterly basis from June 2010. To implement this decision, the publication of the Standards Catalogue also needs to be changed to quarterly publication. The Standards Manual currently states that the Standards Catalogue shall be published at least once every two months.				
Amendment text	Fully update the published Standards Catalogue at least once every three months.				

Uncontrolled When Printed

Document Titles and Descriptions

Control Command and Signalling 2
Plant 11
Rolling Stock 12
Infrastructure 22
Traffic Operation and Management 24
Energy 47

RAILWAY GROUP STANDARDS

BR1654 Iss 2 December 1986 (W)
Radio Electronic Token Block System
This specification describes the general requirements of the radio and associated equipment to be employed on British Rail Repeater Based Band III Radio Electronic Token Block Systems.

GERT8012 Iss 1 December 1999 (A)
Controlling the Speed of Tilting Trains through Curves
This document mandates the means by which Tilting Trains may be operated at higher speeds than non-tilting trains around curves.

GERT8015 Iss 1 October 2002 (A)
Electromagnetic Compatibility between Railway Infrastructure and Trains
This document mandates requirements for the management of electromagnetic compatibility between railway infrastructure and trains. It also mandates the processes to enable compatibility between infrastructure and trains to be demonstrated in order to meet the requirements of route acceptance.

GERT8018 Iss 2 September 2012 (A)
Mechanical Trainstop System Interface
This document details the track / train interface requirements for mechanical trainstop systems. GERT8018 issue two which has been up-issued following completion of the filtering process that identifies that a number of measures are out of scope of the Railway Group Standards Code and therefore have been withdrawn.

GERT8019 Iss 1 April 2000 (A)
Tilting Trains: Controlling Tilt Systems to Maintain Clearances
This document mandates the means by which Tilting Trains are permitted to utilise the tilt mechanism over routes, parts of which contain sections where tilting is prohibited due to clearance limitations.

CANCELLED
GERT8021 Iss 1 April 2002 (A)
Facilities for Emergency Voice Communications with Control Rooms
This document mandates the facilities to be provided for the communication of safety related voice messages to and from control rooms, including signal boxes, in connection with emergencies affecting the operation of the railway.
Document ceases to be in force from June 2013.

GERT8026 Iss 1 December 2000 (A)
Safety Requirements for Cab Signalling Systems
This document defines the Safety Requirements for the provision and use of Rail Traffic Management and Control Systems which make use of Cab Signalling. There is an amendment / clarification associated with this document, for details please refer to the 'More Info' on rgsonline or the 'Amendments and Clarifications to Current Documents' section of the RGS Catalogue.

GERT8030 Iss 4 December 2011 (A)
Requirements for the Train Protection and Warning System (TPWS)
This document mandates the requirements for the Train Protection and Warning System (TPWS), the primary purpose of which is to minimise the consequences of a train passing a TPWS fitted signal at danger and a train overspeeding at certain other locations on Network Rail managed infrastructure. Additionally, it can be expected that TPWS will reduce the number of signals passed at danger (SPADs) at TPWS fitted signals. This document has been up-issued to issue four to incorporate changes arising from proposals relating to power-up testing and in-service monitoring of TPWS trainborne equipment. Sound files for audible alerts have also been incorporated into this document. There is an amendment / clarification associated with this document, for details please refer to the 'More Info' on rgsonline or the 'Amendments and Clarifications to Current Documents' section of the RGS Catalogue.
There is a technical note associated with this document, please refer to the 'Related Documents' section of the catalogue.

GERT8034 Iss 1 December 2001 (A)
Maintenance of Signal Visibility
This document sets out the requirements necessary to ensure that the visibility and alignment of signals, and signs that perform the function of signals, are not adversely affected during the life of the equipment.

GERT8035 Iss 2 March 2012 (A)
Automatic Warning System (AWS)
This document defines the functional, performance and application requirements for the Automatic Warning System.

GERT8037 Iss 1 December 2003 (W)
Signal Positioning and Visibility
This document mandates the requirements for positioning signals and indicators to ensure adequate viewing and clarity of meaning for drivers.

GERT8048 Iss 1 February 2002 (A)
Positioning and Labelling of Lineside Telephones
This document defines the requirements for positioning lineside telephones, in relation to other items of infrastructure and defines the labels and signs required in association with such telephones.

GERT8060 Iss 2 June 2010 (A)
Engineering Requirements for Dispatch of Trains from Platforms
This document mandates the minimum engineering requirements for the facilities used in dispatching trains from platforms.
There is an amendment / clarification associated with this document, for details please refer to the 'More Info' on rgsonline or the 'Amendments and Clarifications to Current Documents' section of the RGS Catalogue.

GERT8064 Iss 1 April 2003 (A)
European Train Control System: The Management of Packet 44
This document mandates the manner in which the packet 44 of the European Train Control System data protocol shall be managed to ensure safety and interworking.
There is an amendment / clarification associated with this document, for details please refer to the 'More Info' on rgsonline or the 'Amendments and Clarifications to Current Documents' section of the RGS Catalogue.

GERT8071 Iss 2 December 2011 (A)
Proceed-on-Sight Authorities
This document mandates the requirements for the degraded mode signalling facility, known as a Proceed-on-Sight Authority (PoSA).

GERT8072 Iss 1 March 2012 (A)
ERTMS National Identities Management
This document mandates requirements for arrangements for the management of the ERTMS National Identities on the mainline railway.
There is an amendment / clarification associated with this document, for details please refer to the 'More Info' on rgsonline or the 'Amendments and Clarifications to Current Documents' section of the RGS Catalogue.

SUPERSEDED
GERT8080 Iss 1 December 2003 (A)
Train Radio Systems for Voice and Related Messaging Communications
This document mandates the minimum requirements for radio systems that provide the principle means of voice and related messaging radio communications between trains and shore-based locations.
There is an amendment / clarification associated with this document, for details please refer to the 'More Info' on rgsonline or the 'Amendments and Clarifications to Current Documents' section of the RGS Catalogue.
Superseded by GKRT0094 Iss 1. Document ceases to be in force from June 2013.

SUPERSEDED
GERT8081 Iss 1 December 2003 (A)
Requirements for GSM-R Voice Radio System
This document mandates requirements for the use of GSM-R systems, where these are available, to support operational voice communications.
Superseded by GKRT0094 Iss 1. Document ceases to be in force from June 2013.

SUPERSEDED
GERT8082 Iss 1 July 2007 (A)
GSM-R Cab Mobile, Great Britain Open Interface Requirements (Rapid Response)
This document sets out the mandatory technical requirements for the application of GSM-R cab mobile on Network Rail controlled infrastructure.
Superseded by GKRT0094 Iss 1. Document ceases to be in force from June 2013.

GERT8106 Iss 2 December 2011 (A)
Management of Safety Related Control, Command and Signalling (CCS) System Failures
Small scale change.
This standard mandates the requirements to ensure that information relating to safety related failures of the control, command and signalling (CCS) system is shared and made available to infrastructure managers and railway undertakings.

GERT8402 Iss 1 March 2012 (A)
ERTMS/ETCS DMI National Requirements
This document mandates requirements for ERTMS / ETCS Driver Machine Interface (DMI) equipment if a speed display in miles per hour is required and / or alphanumeric train running number entry is required.

NEW
GERT8403 Iss 1 December 2011 (A)
ERTMS Key Management
This document mandates requirements for the management of cryptographic keys on the mainline railway to facilitate secure ERTMS data radio communication. ERTMS exchanges information between trackside equipment and trains and vice versa in the form of data messages. When radio is used for these data messages a secure connection is required, and corresponding keys must be available on either side of the connection.
Document comes into force June 2013.

GERT8408 Iss 1 March 2012
ERTMS / ETCS National Values
This document mandates requirements for a process to determine or revise a set of values of ERTMS / ETCS National Values.

GIRT7006 Iss 1 December 2000 (A)
Prevention and Mitigation of Overruns - Risk Assessment
This document defines the requirements for risk assessment of the design and operational use of track and signalling, so as to control the risks associated with trains exceeding the end of their movement authority.

GIRT7033 Iss 2 October 2009 (W)
Lineside Operational Safety Signs
This document mandates the arrangements for the management and specification of lineside operational safety signs in order to provide consistency of form and presentation throughout the network.
There is an amendment / clarification associated with this document, for details please refer to the 'More Info' on rgsonline or the 'Amendments and Clarifications to Current Documents' section of the RGS Catalogue.

GKRT0009 Iss 4 June 2011 (A)
Identification of Signalling and Related Equipment
This document defines the principles for ensuring that signalling and related assets are uniquely identified.

GKRT0028 Iss 1 April 2010 (A)
Infrastructure Based Train Detection Interface Requirements
This document mandates the interface requirements to ensure that train detection systems provide the signalling system with adequate information regarding the position and movement of trains to permit safe control of the railway.

GKRT0036 Iss 2 September 2011 (A)
Transitions Between Signalling Systems
This document mandates the requirements for managing the transition between running lines signalled with lineside signals conforming to Railway Group Standards, and lines signalled using other signalling principles.

GKRT0039 Iss 1 July 1997 (A)
Semaphore and Mechanical Signalling
Principles for controlling Signalling Equipment mechanically.

GKRT0041 Iss 1 July 1997 (A)
Track Circuit Block
This standard sets out the signalling requirements to ensure the safe movement of trains where the Track Circuit Block system is employed.

GKRT0042 Iss 1 July 1997 (A)
Absolute Block
This document sets out the signalling requirements to ensure the safe movement of trains where the Absolute Block system is employed.

GKRT0044 Iss 1 February 2000 (A)
Controls for Signalling a Train onto an Occupied Line
This document defines the safety critical requirements associated with signalling a second train onto a section of railway line which is already occupied by a train.

SUPERSEDED
GKRT0045 Iss 2 March 2012 (B)
Lineside Signals, Indicators and Layout of Signals
Small scale change.
This document defines the format, presentation and layout of lineside signalling equipment that is used to display movement authority information to infrastructure managers operating stations, and railways undertaking personnel.
Superseded by GKRT0045 Iss 3. Document ceases to be in force from March 2013.

NEW
GKRT0045 Iss 3 December 2012 (B)
Lineside Signals, Indicators and Layout of Signals
Small scale change.
This document defines the format, presentation and layout of lineside signalling equipment that is used to display movement authority information to infrastructure managers operating stations, and railway undertaking personnel.
Supersedes GKRT0045 Iss 2. Document comes into force March 2013.

GKRT0051 Iss 1 April 1999 (A)
Single Line Control
This Standard defines the signalling requirements to ensure the safe movement of trains on single lines and equivalent bi-directional lines.

GKRT0053 Iss 1 December 2011 (A)
Control of Unwanted Voltages on Telecommunications Equipment at Stations
This document mandates requirements for the control of unwanted voltages on telecommunications equipment at stations.

GKRT0054 Iss 1 March 1998 (A)
Radio Electronic Token Block
This document sets out the particular signalling requirements to ensure the safe control of trains where the Radio Electronic Token Block system is employed.
There is an amendment / clarification associated with this document, for details please refer to the 'More Info' on rgsonline or the 'Amendments and Clarifications to Current Documents' section of the RGS Catalogue.

GKRT0060 Iss 4 June 2003 (A)
Interlocking Principles
This document mandates the principles of interlocking of signals, points and other parts of the signalling system so that the safe operation of trains is ensured.
There is an amendment / clarification associated with this document, for details please refer to the 'More Info' on rgsonline or the 'Amendments and Clarifications to Current Documents' section of the RGS Catalogue.

GKRT0061 Iss 2 March 1998 (A)
Shunters Releases, Ground Frames, Switch Panels and Gate Boxes
This document defines the principles for the delegation of control of signalling equipment to local control points.

GKRT0063 Iss 1 November 1996 (A)
Approach Locking and Train Operated Route Release
This document defines the safety critical requirements provided to maintain the safety of an approaching train after withdrawal of the authority to proceed and for the provision of Train Operated Route Release.

GKRT0064 Iss 1 December 2000 (A)
Provision of Overlaps, Flank Protection and Trapping
This document specifies a range of controls to be applied to mitigate the consequences of a train overrunning a signal at danger.

GKRT0075 Iss 2 September 2011 (B)
Lineside Signal Spacing and Speed Signage
This document specifies the minimum distances that must be provided between the first cautionary aspect and the stop signal to which it applies. In addition, it addresses the signing for permissible speeds and speed restrictions.
There is an amendment / clarification associated with this document, for details please refer to the 'More Info' on rgsonline or the 'Amendments and Clarifications to Current Documents' section of the RGS Catalogue.

NEW
GKRT0094 Iss 1 March 2013 (B)
Train Voice Radio Systems
This document sets out the mandatory requirements for the application of train voice radio systems, specifically interface requirements for the infrastructure manager and the railway undertakings.
Supersedes GERT8080 Iss 1, GERT8081 Iss 1 , GERT8082 Iss 1. Document comes into force June 2013.

CANCELLED
GKRT0186 Iss 1 October 1996 (A)
Safety Requirements of Signal Post Telephone Systems
This document describes the mandatory requirements for the provision of, or alterations to, signal post telephone systems.
Document ceases to be in force from June 2013.

SUPERSEDED
GKRT0192 Iss 1 February 2010 (A)
Level Crossing Interface Requirements
This document mandates the control, command and signalling requirements for level crossing equipment, so that level crossing functionality is compatible with infrastructure manager operations at stations and railway undertaking operations.
Superseded by GKRT0192 Iss 2. Document ceases to be in force from March 2013.

NEW
GKRT0192 Iss 2 December 2012 (A)
Level Crossing Interface Requirements
Small scale change.
This document mandates the control, command and signalling requirements for level crossing equipment, so that level crossing functionality is compatible with infrastructure manager operations at stations and railway undertaking operations.
Supersedes GKRT0192 Iss 1. Document comes into force March 2013.

GKRT0212 Iss 1 August 2007 (A)
Signalling Lockout Systems to Protect Railway Undertaking Personnel
This document mandates the technical parameters that apply to signalling lockout systems provided for railway undertaking personnel to use.

Uncontrolled When Printed

TDGEN096 Iss 1 January 1992 (A)
Telecommunications Requirements for General & Emergency Use at Sub Surface Stations
This Directive forms a Code of Practice describing the minimum mandatory facilities which should be installed to fully comply with the Fennell recommendations and Fire Precautions (Sub Surface Railway Stations) Regulation 1989.

CANCELLED
TDRAD054 Iss 1 May 1992 (A)
Procedures for The Use of Band 111 / NRN Base Stations for Engineering / Emergency Work
This Directive defines the procedures to be followed when using a Band III / NRN Base Station for Engineering / Emergency Work.
Document ceases to be in force from June 2013.

RAIL INDUSTRY STANDARDS

RIS-0340-CCS Iss 1 September 2010 (B)
Rail Industry Standard for Onboard ETCS
This document is intended to be used by rolling stock owners and operators to assist procurement of the ETCS onboard equipment, and by suppliers in pre-empting the likely demands of GB railway undertakings in their product offerings. This document, or the relevant requirements within it, may also be used in the procurement of ETCS onboard equipment and it has been derived in conjunction with the requirements of version 2.3.0 of the ERTMS Class 1 Specifications. Furthermore, this document includes functional and non-functional requirements for the ETCS onboard equipment on vehicles to be operated in Great Britain (GB) which do not constrain or drive infrastructure functionality, and do not relate to the operation of existing national safety systems.

NEW
RIS-0794-CCS Iss 1 March 2013 (B)
Rail Industry Standard for GSM-R Train Voice Radio
This Railway Industry Standard (RIS) provides requirements and guidance for GSM-R train voice radio, for the rail industry to adopt if they so choose. It supports railway undertakings by capturing single duty holder requirements relating to the design of train voice radio systems, and is associated with the Railway Group Standard (RGS) GKRT0094 and Guidance Note (GN) GKGN0694 for Train Voice Radio Systems.
Supersedes RIS-3082-CCS Iss 1. Document comes into force June 2013.

SUPERSEDED
RIS-3082-CCS Iss 1 July 2007 (B)
Rail Industry Standard for GSM-R Cab Mobile, Great Britain Open Interface Requirements (Rapid Response)
This document sets out the voluntary technical requirements for cab mobile equipment used in conjunction with GSM-R systems on Network Rail controlled infrastructure.
Superseded by RIS-0794-CCS Iss 1.
Document ceases to be in force from June 2013.

CODES OF PRACTICE

GERC8517 Iss 1 June 2001 (A)
Recommendations for Systems for the Supervision of Enhanced Permissible Speeds and Tilt Enable
This document supports GERT8012 and GERT8019. It recommends principles to apply to satisfy the requirements mandated by these two standards.

GUIDANCE NOTES

CANCELLED
GEGN8521 Iss 1 April 2002 (A)
Guidance on Providing Facilities for Emergency Voice Communication with Control Rooms
This document provides guidance on the facilities to be provided for the communication of safety related voice messages to and from control rooms, including signalboxes, in connection with emergencies affecting the operation of the railway.
Document ceases to be in force from June 2013.

GEGN8526 Iss 1 December 2000 (B)
Guidance on Safety Requirements for Cab Signalling Systems
This document provides guidance on meeting the requirements of Railway Group Standard GERT8026.

GEGN8537 Iss 1 December 2003 (B)
Guidance on Signal Positioning and Visibility
This document provides guidance on the requirements for positioning signals and indicators to ensure adequate viewing and clarity of meaning for drivers.

GEGN8560 Iss 1 June 2010 (A)
Guidance on Engineering Requirements for Dispatch of Trains from Platforms
This document gives guidance on interpreting the requirements of Railway Group Standard GERT8060.
There is an amendment / clarification associated with this document, for details please refer to the 'More Info' on rgsonline or the 'Amendments and Clarifications to Current Documents' section of the RGS Catalogue.

GEGN8571 Iss 2 December 2011 (A)
Guidance on Proceed-on-Sight Authorities
This document gives guidance on interpreting the requirements of Railway Group Standard GERT8071 issue two, Proceed-on-Sight Authorities. It does not constitute a recommended method of meeting any set of mandatory requirements.

GEGN8578 Iss 2 September 2011 (C)
Guidance on the Use of Satellite Navigation
This document sets out good practice on the specification, purchase, implementation and installation of satellite navigation technology in support of train position reporting applications. This guidance is provided for the use of train operators, train builders and service providers.
There is an amendment / clarification associated with this document, for details please refer to the 'More Info' on rgsonline or the 'Amendments and Clarifications to Current Documents' section of the RGS Catalogue.

GEGN8579 Iss 1 June 2008 (B)
Guidance on Digital Wireless Technology for Train Operators
This document sets out good practice on the specification, purchase, implementation and installation of data communications technology in support of broadband applications on the UK railways. Deployment of high-speed data communications and its use on the railways is the main focus of this guidance note. The guidance provided is for the use of train operators, infrastructure providers, train builders and communications service providers.
There is an amendment / clarification associated with this document, for details please refer to the 'More Info' on rgsonline or the 'Amendments and Clarifications to Current Documents' section of the RGS Catalogue.

SUPERSEDED
GEGN8580 Iss 1 December 2003 (A)
Guidance on Train Radio Systems for Voice and Related Messaging Communications
This document provides guidance on meeting the requirements for radio systems that provide the principle means of voice and related messaging radio communications between trains and shore-based locations.
Superseded by GKGN0694 Iss 1. Document ceases to be in force from June 2013.

SUPERSEDED
GEGN8582 Iss 1 July 2007 (B)
Guidance on GSM-R Cab Mobile, Great Britain Open Interface Requirements (Rapid Response)
This document provides guidance on the requirements for GSM-R cab mobile, Great Britain open interface requirements as set out in GERT8082 and RIS-3082-CCS. It is recommended that the user refers to this guidance note in preference as it includes the full scope of the technical requirements for GERT8082 and RIS-3082-CCS.
Superseded by GKGN0694 Iss 1. Document ceases to be in force from June 2013.

GEGN8602 Iss 1 March 2012 (A)
Guidance on ERTMS / ETCS DMI National Requirements
This document provides guidance on GERT8402 ERTMS / ETCS DMI National Requirements, which mandates requirements for ERTMS / ETCS Driver Machine Interface (DMI) equipment if a speed display in miles per hour is required and / or alphanumeric train running number entry is required.

NEW
GEGN8603 Iss 1 December 2011 (A)
Guidance on ERTMS Key Management
This document provides guidance on GERT8403 ERTMS Key Management, which mandates requirements for the management of cryptographic keys on the mainline railway to facilitate secure ERTMS data radio communication. ERTMS exchanges information between trackside equipment and trains and vice versa in the form of data messages. When radio is used for these data messages a secure connection is required, and corresponding keys must be available on either side of the connection.
Document comes into force June 2013.

GEGN8605 Iss 1 February 2010 (A)
ETCS System Description
This document describes the system architecture and behaviour of the European Train Control System (ETCS) as it will be implemented in Great Britain (GB).

GEGN8608 Iss 1 March 2012 (A)
Guidance on ERTMS / ETCS National Values
This document provides guidance on GERT8408 ERTMS / ETCS National Values, which mandates requirements for a process to determine or revise a set of values of ERTMS / ETCS National Values.

GEGN8618 Iss 1 September 2012 (A)
Guidance on Mechanical Trainstop System
This document gives guidance on GERT8018 issue two which has been up-issued following completion of the filtering process that identifies that a number of measures are out of scope of the Railway Group Standards Code and therefore have been withdrawn.

GEGN8642 Iss 1 September 2012 (A)
Guidance on Identifying Hazards and Assessing Risk
GEGN8642 issue one provides guidance on identifying hazards and assessing risk and is intended to assist organisations involved in the GB mainline railway system in understanding their responsibilities in these areas.

GEGN8643 Iss 1 September 2012 (A)
Guidance on Reducing Risk
GEGN8643 issue one provides guidance on reducing risk and is intended to assist organisations involved in the GB mainline railway system in understanding their responsibilities in this area.

GEGN8672 Iss 1 March 2012 (A)
Guidance on ERTMS National Identities Management
This document provides guidance on GERT8072 ERTMS National Identities Management, which mandates requirements for arrangements for the management of the ERTMS National Identities on the mainline railway.
There is an amendment / clarification associated with this document, for details please refer to the 'More Info' on rgsonline or the 'Amendments and Clarifications to Current Documents' section of the RGS Catalogue.

GIGN7606 Iss 1 December 2000 (A)
Guidance Note: Prevention and Mitigation of Overruns - Risk Assessment
This document provides guidance on meeting the requirements of Railway Group Standard GIRT7006.

GKGN0554 Iss 1 August 2008 (W)
Guidance on Radio Electronic Token Block (RETB)
This document presents information gathered from legacy and industry documentation to provide a single document that explains the RETB system. It includes operational and functional descriptions and sets out current RETB best practices.

GKGN0602 Iss 1 December 2010 (B)
Guidance on Train Rooftop Antenna Positioning
This document gives guidance on train rooftop antenna positioning with the intention of assisting infrastructure managers, railway undertakings and other organisations required to fit antennas on train rooftops in relation to good practice for train rooftop antenna positioning.

GKGN0609 Iss 1 June 2011 (A)
Guidance on Identification of Signalling and Related Equipment
This document gives guidance on interpreting the requirements of Railway Group Standard GKRT0009 issue four, Identification of Signalling and Related Equipment. It does not constitute a recommended method of meeting any of mandatory requirements.

GKGN0612 Iss 1 August 2007 (A)
Guidance on Signalling Lockout Systems to Protect Railway Undertaking Personnel
This document provides guidance on meeting the requirements of Railway Group Standard GKRT0212.

GKGN0622 Iss 1 September 2012 (W)
Guidance on Immunisation of Signalling and Telecommunications Systems against Electrical Interference from 50Hz Single Phase A.C Electrification
GKGN0622 issue one provides guidance on Immunisation of Signalling and Telecommunications Systems against Electrical Interference, which was previously found in BR13422 issue one.

GKGN0628 Iss 1 April 2010 (A)
Guidance on Infrastructure Based Train Detection Interface Requirements
This document gives guidance on interpreting the requirements of Railway Group Standard GKRT0028. It does not constitute a recommended method of meeting any set of mandatory requirements.

GKGN0636 Iss 1 September 2011 (A)
Guidance on Transitions Between Signalling Systems
This document gives guidance on interpreting the requirements of Railway Group Standard GKRT0036 issue two, Transitions Between Signalling Systems. It does not constitute a recommended method of meeting any set of mandatory requirements.

SUPERSEDED
GKGN0645 Iss 2 March 2012 (W)
Guidance on Lineside Signals, Indicators and Layout of Signals
Small scale change.
This document gives guidance on interpreting the requirements of Railway Group Standard GKRT0045 issue two. It does not constitute a recommended method of meeting any set of mandatory requirements.
Superseded by GKGN0645 Iss 3. Document ceases to be in force from March 2013.

NEW
GKGN0645 Iss 3 December 2012 (W)
Guidance on Lineside Signals, Indicators and Layout of Signals
Small scale change. This document gives guidance on interpreting the requirements of Railway Group Standard GKRT0045 issue three. It does not constitute a recommended method of meeting any set of mandatory requirements.
Supersedes GKGN0645 Iss 2. Document comes into force March 2013.

GKGN0653 Iss 1 December 2011 (A)
Guidance on Control of Unwanted Voltages on Telecommunications Equipment at Stations
This document gives guidance on interpreting the requirements of Railway Group Standard GKRT0053 issue one, Control of Unwanted Voltages on Telecommunications Equipment at Stations.

GKGN0675 Iss 2 September 2011 (B)
Guidance on Lineside Signal Spacing and Speed Signage
This document gives guidance on interpreting the requirements of Railway Group Standard GKRT0075 issue two, Lineside Signal Spacing and Speed Signage.

SUPERSEDED
GKGN0692 Iss 1 February 2010 (A)
Guidance on Level Crossing Interface Requirements
This document gives guidance on interpreting the requirements of Railway Group Standard GKRT0192. It does not constitute a recommended method of meeting any set of mandatory requirements.
There is an amendment / clarification associated with this document, for details please refer to the 'More Info' on rgsonline or the 'Amendments and Clarifications to Current Documents' section of the RGS Catalogue.
Superseded by GKGN0692 Iss 2. Document ceases to be in force from March 2013.

NEW
GKGN0692 Iss 2 December 2012 (A)
Guidance on Level Crossing Interface
Small scale change.
This document gives guidance on interpreting the requirements of Railway Group Standard GKRT0192 issue two. It does not constitute a recommended method of meeting any set of mandatory requirements.
Supersedes GKGN0692 Iss 1. Document comes into force March 2013.

NEW
GKGN0694 Iss 1 March 2013 (B)
Guidance on Train Voice Radio Systems
This document provides rationale and guidance to support the train voice radio requirements in GKRT0094 for the Great Britain (GB) rail network.
Supersedes GEGN8580 Iss 1, GEGN8582 Iss 1. Document comes into force June 2013.

GKGN0802 Iss 1 April 2004 (W)
Glossary of Signalling Terms
This document defines the meaning of commonly used terms which are specific to signalling or used in a signalling context. The objective is to provide a common and clearly understood meaning of each term.

MANUAL

None

FORMS

Form RT8106 Iss 1 October 2008
Example Failure Data Collection Form
This form is an example of an appropriate format for recoding the collection of data when carrying out a failure investigation as mandated by GERT8106 issue 1, Management of Safety Related Control, Command and Signalling (CCS) System Failures.

Uncontrolled When Printed

OTHER

NEW
BR1609 Iss 2 August 1987 (B)
VHF Band III Radio for the National Radio Network Incorporating the Train Overlay System
This document sets out the requirements for radio systems that provide the principal means of voice and related messaging radio communications for the national radio network. This document is associated with GKRT0094 Train Voice Radio Systems.
Document came into force August 1987.

NEW
BR1661 Iss D March 1990 (B)
Train to Signalbox Radio System (Train Radio)
This document sets out the requirements for radio systems that provide the principal means of voice and related messaging radio communications for the cab secure radio system. This document is associated with GKRT0094 Train Voice Radio Systems.
Document came into force March 1990.

RAILWAY GROUP STANDARDS

GMRT2307 Iss 1 April 1995 (A)
Self Contained Electrical Power Supply Systems Fitted to Infrastructure Support Vehicles
This document details the requirements for the design and installation of self-contained electrical power supplies, in addition to BS7671 on infrastructure support vehicles.

GMRT2400 Iss 4 September 2011 (A)
Engineering Design of On-Track Machines
This document defines the design requirements for features of on-track machines which are not addressed by other Railway Group Standards.
There is an amendment / clarification associated with this document, for details please refer to the 'More Info' on rgsonline or the 'Amendments and Clarifications to Current Documents' section of the RGS Catalogue.

GMRT2476 Iss 1 August 2003 (A)
On-Track Machine Requirements for Demonstrating the Reliable Operation of Track Circuits
This document mandates the on-track machine characteristics which determine the ability of that vehicle to operate track circuits under normal railhead conditions. It also mandates the requirements for demonstrating that a vehicle will operate track circuits reliably, and explains how a TCA can be used to assist in meeting these requirements.

RAIL INDUSTRY STANDARDS

RIS-1530-PLT Iss 4 December 2012 (W)
Rail Industry Standard for Engineering Acceptance of On-Track Plant and Associated Equipment
RIS-1530-PLT is a single document on engineering acceptance of on-track plant (OTP) and associated equipment. The document contains both requirements and guidance for the rail industry to use if they so choose. The requirements only become mandatory when invoked by contract or a commitment in the duty holder's Railway Safety Case.

RIS-1700-PLT Iss 3 March 2011 (A)
Rail Industry Standard for Safe Use of Plant for Infrastructure Work
This document details requirements for the safe use of plant (as defined in this document) on, or that could affect, Network Rail controlled infrastructure, used for all infrastructure related activities, including (but not limited to) maintaining, inspecting, measuring, renewing and installing infrastructure and its components. This document is particularly relevant to situations where plant has the potential to infringe running line clearances or where plant is used adjacent to an open running line.

RIS-1701-PLT Iss 2 June 2012 (A)
Rail Industry Standard for Portable and Transportable Plant Used for Infrastructure Work
The document gives the necessary information for the acceptance of portable and transportable plant for infrastructure work on Network Rail managed infrastructure, and the railway specific engineering requirements for certain types of portable and transportable plant.

CODES OF PRACTICE

None

GUIDANCE NOTES

GMGN2575 Iss 2 June 2004 (W)
Guidance on the Engineering Acceptance of On-Track Machines
This document gives guidance on the evidence to be produced to support an application for a certificate of Engineering Acceptance for an on-track machine.
There is an amendment / clarification associated with this document, for details please refer to the 'More Info' on rgsonline or the 'Amendments and Clarifications to Current Documents' section of the RGS Catalogue.

GMGN2576 Iss 1 August 2003 (A)
Guidance on Vehicle Requirements for Reliable Track Circuit Operation
This document supports GMRT2476 On-Track machine requirements for demonstrating the reliable operation of track circuits and GMRT2477 TCA configuration for rail vehicles.

MANUAL

None

FORMS

None

OTHER

None

RAILWAY GROUP STANDARDS

GERT8014 Iss 2 June 2011 (A)
Axlebox Condition Monitoring - Hot Axlebox Detection
This document mandates requirements for rolling stock and infrastructure subsystems to be applied in the design of new or altered rolling stock for the detection of hot axleboxes, by trackside hot axlebox detectors (HABDs) and onboard axle bearing monitoring systems.

GERT8250 Iss 2 June 2007 (A)
Reporting High Risk Defects
This document defines requirements for recording, analysing and reporting safety-related defects on rail vehicles, their components, systems, subsystems and related documentation. It also defines requirements for taking action following receipt of a national incident report (NIR).
There is an amendment / clarification associated with this document, for details please refer to the 'More Info' on rgsonline or the 'Amendments and Clarifications to Current Documents' section of the RGS Catalogue.

GERT8270 Iss 2 October 2007 (A)
Assessment of Compatibility of Rolling Stock and Infrastructure
This document mandates requirements and responsibilities for the assessment of compatibility of rolling stock and infrastructure.
There is an amendment / clarification associated with this document, for details please refer to the 'More Info' on rgsonline or the 'Amendments and Clarifications to Current Documents' section of the RGS Catalogue.

GMRT2000 Iss 3 December 2009 (A)
Engineering Acceptance of Rail Vehicles
Small Scale Change.
This document defines, where applicable, a process, known as the Engineering Acceptance process, to confirm that a rail vehicle conforms to the relevant Mandatory Requirements.
There is a technical note associated with this document, please refer to the 'Related Documents' section of the catalogue.

GMRT2001 Iss 2 December 2009 (A)
Design Scrutiny for the Engineering Acceptance of Rail Vehicles
Small Scale Change.
This document defines, where applicable, a process to confirm that the design of a new or modified rail vehicle conforms to the relevant mandatory requirements.

GMRT2003 Iss 1 December 1996 (A)
Certification Requirements for Registration of Steam Locomotives
This document defines the certification requirements for Steam Locomotives that are required to enable them to be registered for operation on Railtrack controlled infrastructure. The audit requirements for their continued operation are also defined.

GMRT2004 Iss 5 June 2012 (A)
Rail Vehicle Maintenance
This document sets out the arrangements by which continued conformity to standards, known as the Maintenance Plan is achieved together with the requirements for the provision of documentation for the maintenance of rail vehicles.
Small scale change amendment to delete clause 3.1.3 f) and 3.1.3 g) and updated references to CR LOC&PAS TSI to remove the 'draft' number.

GMRT2040 Iss 1 May 1995 (A)
Calculation of Brake Force Data for Rolling Stock Library
This Railway Group Standard defines the method of calculating the brake force data for inclusion in the Rolling Stock Library.

GMRT2041 Iss 2 April 2000 (A)
Braking System Requirements and Performance for Trailer Coaching Stock
This document defines the performance requirements of the braking systems of trailer coaching stock together with the principal features to be incorporated to enable safety of operation and safe interworking to take place.

GMRT2042 Iss 2 April 2000 (A)
Braking System Requirements and Performance for Traction Units
This document defines the performance requirements of the braking systems of traction units together with the principal features to be incorporated to enable safety of operation and safe interworking to take place.

GMRT2043 Iss 2 June 2011 (A)
Braking System and Performance for Freight Trains
This Standard defines the performance requirements of the braking systems of freight trains together with the principal features that shall be incorporated to enable safe operation and interworking to take place.
This document contains requirements that are amended under the Railway Group Standards Code (Issue Three) as a small scale change. Reference to the amended requirements is made in the 'Issue record'. All other parts of the document are unchanged from the previous issue.

GMRT2044 Iss 4 June 2001 (A)
Braking System Requirements and Performance for Multiple Units
This document defines the principles of operation and performance requirements for the braking systems of Multiple Units for operation on Railtrack controlled infrastructure, in order to ensure safety of operation and safe interworking.

GMRT2045 Iss 3 September 2011 (A)
Braking Principles for Rail Vehicles
This document defines the principles of operation and performance requirements for the braking systems of rail vehicles for operation on Railtrack controlled infrastructure, in order to ensure safety of operation and safe interworking.
Small scale change amendment to clause 7.1.2 second paragraph. Amendment to cross references in clause 11.6 g) from GKRT0034 to GKRT0075 and all clauses that previously referenced GORT3000 have been updated to GERT8000.
There is a technical note associated with this document, please refer to the 'Related Documents' section of the catalogue.

GMRT2046 Iss 1 April 2000 (A)
Braking System Requirements and Performance for Trains which Operate above 125 mile/h
This document defines the braking systems of trains when operating above 125 mile/h. It sets out the principal features to be incorporated to enable safety of operation and safe interworking to take place.

GMRT2100 Iss 5 June 2012 (B)
Requirements for Rail Vehicle Structures
This document mandates requirements for the design and integrity of rail vehicle structures for both primary and secondary structures, including interior crashworthiness.
Issue five was produced using the small scale change process to include a missing requirement for couplings, previously included in GMRT2190 issue two, and now enhanced.

GMRT2130 Iss 3 December 2010 (A)
Vehicle Fire, Safety and Evacuation
This document mandates requirements for the provision of rail vehicle fire safety and evacuation arrangements. In particular, it addresses matters of rail vehicle design associated with fire safety, diesel propulsion, emergency lighting, emergency and safety equipment, emergency and safety information and emergency evacuation.

GMRT2132 Iss 1 September 2010 (A)
On-board Energy Metering for Billing Purposes
This document sets out the energy metering requirements when electric traction units are fitted with an energy measuring system that provides data to be used by the infrastructure manager for billing purposes.

GMRT2141 Iss 3 June 2009 (A)
Resistance of Railway Vehicles to Derailment and Roll-Over
This document mandates requirements for rolling stock to ensure acceptable resistance against flange climbing derailment and against roll-over induced by overspeeding.
There is a technical note associated with this document, please refer to the 'Related Documents' section of the catalogue.

GMRT2142 Iss 3 August 2009 (A)
Resistance of Railway Vehicles to Roll-Over in Gales
This document mandates safety criteria requirements for railway vehicles to ensure safe performance when operating under gale conditions. The objective is to minimise the likelihood of vehicle roll-over.
There is an amendment / clarification associated with this document, for details please refer to the 'More Info' on rgsonline or the 'Amendments and Clarifications to Current Documents' section of the RGS Catalogue.

GMRT2149 Iss 3 February 2003 (A)
Requirements for Defining and Maintaining the Size of Railway Vehicles
This document mandates the methods of determining, and the requirements for maintaining, the operational envelope of rail vehicles. It mandates the format of the prescribed parameters for defining the size of railway vehicles.
There is an amendment / clarification associated with this document, for details please refer to the 'More Info' on rgsonline or the 'Amendments and Clarifications to Current Documents' section of the RGS Catalogue.
There is a technical note associated with this document, please refer to the 'Related Documents' section of the catalogue.

GMRT2160 Iss 4 December 2010 (A)
Environment Inside Railway Vehicles (Audibility of detonators)
This document mandates requirements for the audibility of detonators in driving cabs.

GMRT2161 Iss 1 August 1995 (A)
Requirements for Driving Cabs of Railway Vehicles
This document describes the requirements for external visibility from inside driving cabs for control facilities and for other interior arrangements, to ensure a working environment in which drivers of traction and rolling stock vehicles and on-track machines can carry out their operational duties safely and effectively.

GMRT2162 Iss 3 June 2011 (A)
Traincrew Access to and Egress from Railway Vehicles
This document mandates requirements for traincrew access to and egress from railway vehicles.
A small scale change to the application of the document.
There is an amendment / clarification associated with this document, for details please refer to the 'More Info' on rgsonline or the 'Amendments and Clarifications to Current Documents' section of the RGS Catalogue.

GMRT2176 Iss 1 December 1995 (A)
Air Quality and Lighting Environment for Traincrew Inside Railway Vehicles
This document prescribes requirements for air quality and lighting levels in traincrew areas inside railway vehicles, to ensure an acceptable working environment in which drivers and other traincrew can carry out their operational duties safely and effectively. This standard applies to traction and rolling stock vehicles and to on-track machines.
Section 6 of this document has been superseded by GMRT2130 Iss 1.
There is an amendment / clarification associated with this document, for details please refer to the 'More Info' on rgsonline or the 'Amendments and Clarifications to Current Documents' section of the RGS Catalogue.

GMRT2181 Iss 3 April 1998 (A)
Overhead Line Equipment (O.L.E.) Warning Line on Traction and Rolling Stock
This document defines the requirements for the overhead line equipment (OLE) warning line to be applied to traction and rolling stock.

GMRT2185 Iss 2 December 2001 (A)
Train Safety Systems
This document defines the requirements for train safety systems to enable safe operation of trains on Railtrack controlled infrastructure.

GMRT2190 Iss 3 December 2010 (A)
Compatibility Requirements for Rail Vehicle Couplings and Interconnectors
This document mandates requirements for the design of rail vehicle couplings and interconnectors. The data on mechanical and electrical couplers can be found at http://www.rssb.co.uk/RGS/Pages/SystemsData.aspx.

GMRT2273 Iss 3 June 2011 (A)
Post Incident and Post Accident Testing of Rail Vehicles
This document mandates requirements for post incident and post accident examination and testing of rail vehicles, with particular requirements for testing of brakes, speed indicating systems, and exterior doors.

GMRT2304 Iss 3 April 2004 (A)
Equipotential Bonding of Rail Vehicles to Running Rail Potential
This document mandates the requirements for equipotential bonding of rail vehicles to comply with the Electricity at Work Regulations and to prevent danger arising from electrically charged exposed conductive parts.

GMRT2450 Iss 1 December 1995 (W)
Qualification of Suppliers of Safety Critical Engineering Products and Services
Safety critical engineering products and services ultimately for use on Railtrack controlled infrastructure shall be procured from qualified suppliers who shall demonstrate their competence to supply products and services that will sustain the safety of the railway.

GMRT2452 Iss 1 February 1999 (A)
Acceptance of Trams and Light Rail or Metro Vehicles for Shared Running on Railtrack Controlled Infrastructure
This document defines the mandatory requirements for trams, light rail or metro vehicles in a situation where they operate through services from other administrations onto Railtrack controlled infrastructure.

GMRT2453 Iss 2 September 2011 (A)
Registration, Identification and Data to be Displayed on Rail Vehicles
This document mandates the requirements for the identification of rail vehicles, the requirements for the registration of rail vehicles in the rolling stock library and data to be displayed on the rail vehicles.

GMRT2461 Iss 1 August 2001 (A)
Sanding Equipment Fitted to Multiple Units and On-Track Machines
This document sets out the requirements for the performance, installation and operation of sanding equipment when fitted to multiple units and on-track machines.

GMRT2466 Iss 3 February 2010 (B)
Railway Wheelsets
This document mandates requirements for the design, manufacture and maintenance of wheelsets and their components.
There is an amendment / clarification associated with this document, for details please refer to the 'More Info' on rgsonline or the 'Amendments and Clarifications to Current Documents' section of the RGS Catalogue.

GMRT2472 Iss 1 June 2002 (A)
Data Recorders on Trains - Design Requirements
This document defines the design requirements for the provision and function of data recorders on trains.
There is an amendment / clarification associated with this document, for details please refer to the 'More Info' on rgsonline or the 'Amendments and Clarifications to Current Documents' section of the RGS Catalogue.

GMRT2473 Iss 1 February 2003 (A)
Power Operated External Doors on Passenger Carrying Rail Vehicles
This document mandates the minimum design and maintenance requirements to enable passengers to safely gain access to, and egress from, passenger trains via external bodyside doors.

GMRT2477 Iss 2 August 2009 (A)
Track Circuit Assister Configuration for Rail Vehicles
This Standard mandates where TCAs shall be fitted onto a vehicle and how they shall be set up. It also contains the requirements for testing a TCA.

GMRT2483 Iss 1 August 2004 (A)
Visibility Requirements for Trains
This document sets out the mandatory requirements for visibility of trains, and supporting guidance information.
There is an amendment / clarification associated with this document, for details please refer to the 'More Info' on rgsonline or the 'Amendments and Clarifications to Current Documents' section of the RGS Catalogue.

GMRT2484 Iss 2 April 2007 (A)
Audibility Requirements for Trains
This document mandates the warning horn sound pressure levels necessary for all rail vehicles that have driving cabs.

GMRT2491 Iss 2 October 2009 (A)
Design Requirements for a Driver's Reminder Appliance (DRA)
This document mandates the design requirements for the provision and functionality of DRA in the driving cabs of trains, to enable the driver to set a reminder that the signal ahead may be at danger.

GMTT0088 Iss 1 October 1993 (A)
Permissible Track Forces for Railway Vehicles
This document prescribes design and maintenance requirements for traction and rolling stock and for on-track plant, to ensure that interactive forces and stresses generated between vehicles and track are limited to acceptable levels. Vehicle performance limits relating to wheel loads, wheel diameters, unsprung masses and suspension characteristics are specified.
There is a technical note associated with this document, please refer to the 'Related Documents' section of the catalogue.

GOOTS303 Iss 1 January 1993 (A)
Secondary Door Locking - Operational Requirements
This document defines the minimum operational requirements for a system of secondary locking of passenger operated slam doors to reduce passenger injuries and fatalities.

RAIL INDUSTRY STANDARDS

RIS-2701-RST Iss 1 March 2011 (A)
Rail Industry Standard for NDT Processes on Rail Vehicles
This document sets out requirements and gives guidance for the certification of operatives, equipment and facilities used to undertake NDT of components on rail vehicles.

RIS-2702-RST Iss 1 March 2011 (A)
Rail Industry Standard for In-Service Examination and Reference Limits for Freight Wagons
This document sets out 'The Registered List of Agreed Criteria' for the in-service examination and lubrication of freight wagons, for operation on Network Rail managed infrastructure.

RIS-2705-RST Iss 1 December 2011 (A)
Rail Industry Standard for Crippling and Release of Freight Wagons
This document sets out requirements for crippling and release of freight wagons and replaces Freight Technical Committee Business Standard 009 (FTC/BS/009).

NEW
RIS-2706-RST Iss 1 March 2013 (A)
Rail Industry Standard for Recording of Rolling Stock Data
This document provides a standard on rolling stock shared data and sets out both the minimum mandated and non-mandated rolling stock data that should be accessible to the rail industry members, irrespective of which information technology (IT) system is in use. It is derived from existing information in ATOC Code of Practice, ACOPEC01002: Approved Code of Practice – Maintenance Systems Shared Data and T&RS Systems Management Group Code of Practice, SMG012: Code of Practice defining Traction and Rolling Stock Shared Data.
Document comes into force March 2013.

NEW
RIS-2773-RST Iss 1 March 2013 (A)
Format for Vehicle Gauging Data
This document provides a standard format for defining the gauge of a vehicle for the purposes of compatibility assessment when undertaking absolute gauging. It can also be used for the purposes of assessment against standard dynamic vehicle gauges. A standard blank electronic spreadsheet (provided in Microsoft Excel) is available at: http://www.rssb.co.uk/groups/SIC/Documents/VGD_spreadsheet.xlsx.
Document comes into force March 2013.

CODES OF PRACTICE

GMRC2494 Iss 2 February 2010 (A)
Recommendations for Railway Wheelsets Design
GMRC2494 supports GMRT2466 and provides recommendations for the methodology of wheelset design, design of wheels, axles, axle bearings and flanges, materials and wheelset assembly design considerations.

GMRC2495 Iss 1 August 2008 (A)
Recommendations for Railway Wheelset Manufacture and Assembly
This document supports GMRT2466 and provides recommendations for the manufacture and assembly of wheelsets including materials, testing of components and wheelsets, the assembly, corrosion protection, handling and care of wheelsets, wheelset identification and records to ensure traceability.

GMRC2496 Iss 2 February 2010 (A)
Recommendations for Railway Wheelset Maintenance
GMRC2496 supports GMRT2466 and provides recommendations for the maintenance of wheelsets including the delivery of the maintenance plan, care and treatment of wheelsets off vehicle, overhaul and repair, examination of components, prohibited components, assembly of wheelsets, balancing of wheelsets, and non-destructive and electrical testing.

GMRC2510 Iss 1 January 1995 (A)
Code of Practice for Acceptance Testing of Rail Vehicles
This Code of Practice provides a check-list of those mandatory requirements that may need to be verified as part of acceptance testing. It also draws attention to the close link between acceptance testing and the design scrutiny process.

GMRC2513 Iss 1 February 1995 (A)
Commentary on Permissible Track Forces for Railway Vehicles
This commentary provides technical background information and guidance on applying Railway Group Standard GMTT0088 which prescribes design and maintenance requirements or traction and rolling stock and On-Track machines, to ensure that the interactive forces and stresses generated between vehicles and track are limited to acceptable levels.

GMRC2514 Iss 3 April 2004 (A)
Recommendations for Equipotential Bonding of Rail Vehicles to Running Rail Potential
This Code of Practice provides guidance on achieving the requirements of GMRT2304.

GMRC2515 Iss 1 January 1996 (A)
Engineering Development of Rail Vehicles - Code of Practice
This Code of Practice gives guidance on the procedures to be adopted that will help ensure that engineering change of rail vehicles does not degrade their safety performance.

GMRC2530 Iss 1 June 2008 (A)
Recommendations for Rail Vehicle Fire Safety
GMRC2530 provides the background objectives for and an explanation of the format of Part 2 of GMRT2130. Additionally, it sets out recommendations for the application of fixed fire protection systems for the protection of on-board systems, together with information on smoke and toxic emissions.

GMRC2531 Iss 1 June 2008 (A)
Recommendations for Rail Vehicle Emergency Lighting
GMRC2531 provides an explanation of the difference between emergency and standby lighting, and the purpose of emergency lighting. Additionally, it provides an explanation of and recommendations on the means of delivering the requirements for emergency lighting.

GMRC2532 Iss 1 June 2008 (A)
Recommendations for Rail Vehicles Emergency & Safety Equipment
GMRC2532 provides recommendations for emergency and safety equipment together with examples of suitable specifications for such equipment.

GMRC2533 Iss 1 June 2008 (A)
Recommendations for Communication of Rail Vehicle Emergency & Safety Information
GMRC2533 provides recommendations for the communication of emergency and safety information. It includes references to other relevant published documents - including 'Graphics guidelines for safety signs' and 'Guidelines for symbol design and testing' http://www.rssb.co.uk/RGS/Pages/STANDARDSRELATEDINFORMATION.aspx. It provides check lists for specific areas of the vehicle, as well as check lists and guidance for the design process of emergency and safety information.

GMRC2534 Iss 1 June 2008 (A)
Recommendations for Rail Vehicle Emergency Evacuation
GMRC2534 provides an overview of and the principles of designing rail vehicle interiors for emergency evacuation, as well as recommendations and a procedure for evacuation testing and validation.

GMRC2542 Iss 1 August 2009 (A)
Recommendations for Determination of Aerodynamic Rolling Moment Coefficient
This Code of Practice provides details of methodologies for determining a more accurate aerodynamic rolling moment coefficient for the vehicle, as an alternative to using the benchmark aerodynamic rolling moment coefficient equations in GMRT2142.

GMRC2559 Iss 1 October 2000 (A)
Railtrack Approved Code of Practice: Safe Testing of Rail Vehicles on Railtrack Controlled Infrastructure
This Railtrack Approved Code of Practice details items that should be considered when identifying risks and control measures associated with the testing of vehicles on Railtrack controlled infrastructure.

GMRC2641 Iss 2 June 2009 (A)
Recommendations for Vehicle Static Testing
This document has been published by Rail Safety and Standards Board (RSSB) to give details of recommended methods which, if followed, would meet the requirements of GMRT2141 Resistance of Railway Vehicles to Derailment and Roll-Over in respect of static testing. It also contains recommendations for the purpose of vehicle simulation model validation.

GUIDANCE NOTES

GEGN8502 Iss 1 February 1999 (A)
Operation of Trams and Light Rail or Metro Vehicles Over Railtrack Controlled Infrastructure
This document provides guidance for Train Operators, Station Operators and Railtrack Line in a situation where trams, light rail or metro vehicles operate through services from other administrations onto Railtrack controlled infrastructure.

GEGN8565 Iss 1 June 2004 (A)
Guidance on the Retention of Design Information, Validation of Technical Change and Configuration Management
This document provides guidance to manufacturers, asset owners and operators on the concept of a design authority and the four underlying competencies fundamental to asset management.

GEGN8577 Iss 2 June 2010 (B)
Guidance on the Application of Selective Door Operating Systems
This document is intended to assist railway undertakings and infrastructure managers in selecting and implementing Selective Door Operation (SDO) systems appropriate for specific applications. The factors which determine the level of functionality of SDO systems appropriate to a particular application are also considered. The document has been revised using the small scale change process to include guidance on vehicle based SDO solutions.

GEGN8614 Iss 1 June 2011 (A)
Guidance on Axlebox Condition Monitoring - Hot Axlebox Detection
This document provides guidance for rolling stock and infrastructure substations to be applied in the design of a new or altered rolling stock for the detection of hot axleboxes, by trackside hot axlebox detectors (HABDs) and onboard axle bearing monitoring systems.

Uncontrolled When Printed

GMGN2169 Iss 1 April 2007 (W)
Combined Manual for AWS and TPWS Trainborne Equipment
GMGN2169 document provides good practice information on maintenance, testing and fault finding procedures associated with Automatic Warning System and Train Protection and Warning System trainborne equipment, to assist in maintaining the reliability of these essential safety systems at an appropriate level.
There is an amendment / clarification associated with this document, for details please refer to the 'More Info' on rgsonline or the 'Amendments and Clarifications to Current Documents' section of the RGS Catalogue.

GMGN2460 Iss 1 April 2008 (A)
Guidance on Compliance with Noise and Vibration Legislation in the Railway Environment
This document provides guidance for infrastructure managers and railway undertakings on the legislation relating to noise and vibration in the railway environment. The guidance covers hand-arm and whole body vibration, as well as noise. The guidance provides information to assist in complying with the legislation.

GMGN2497 Iss 1 December 2007 (A)
Guidance on Railway Wheelset Tread, Gauging and Damage Identification
The content of GMGN2497 is new in the form of a Railway Group Guidance Note but it is derived from the existing information in the Common Domain documents MT162 Identification of Wheel & Tyre Tread Damage Requiring Remedial Attention, and MT288 Wheelset Tread & Gauging Standards. The content has been updated in light of current industry good practice.

GMGN2498 Iss 1 August 2008 (A)
Guidance on Wheelset Handling, Storage and Transportation
The content of GMGN2498 is new in the form of a Rail Industry Guidance Note but it is derived from the existing information in the Common Domain document MT300 'Requirements for Handling, Storage and Transportation of Wheelsets'. The content has been updated in light of current industry good practice.

GMGN2571 Iss 1 June 2002 (A)
Guidance on the Storage and Recommissioning of Traction and Rolling Stock
This document gives guidance on the storage and recommissioning of traction and rolling stock that is withdrawn from operation on Railtrack controlled infrastructure for an extended period.

GMGN2572 Iss 1 April 2001 (A)
Guidance on the Provision of Automatic Train Protection Space Envelopes on Rail Vehicles
This document gives guidance on the provision of sufficient suitable space envelopes within the design of new rail vehicles to enable retrofitting of automatic train protection or similar systems.

GMGN2606 Iss 1 June 2010 (A)
Guidance on the Fitment and Functionality of Forward and Rear Facing Cameras on Rolling Stock
This document gives guidance on fitting forward and rear facing camera systems on rolling stock. It enables railway undertakings to adopt a common methodology in the fitment and functionality of forward and rear facing camera systems. It does not constitute a recommended method of meeting any set of mandatory requirements.

GMGN2607 Iss 1 September 2010 (A)
Guidance on the Braking Requirements for Hauling Unbraked Multiple Units in Freight Trains
This document gives guidance on the braking requirements for hauling multiple units in a freight train. This guidance is intended to assist railway undertakings in understanding their responsibilities in relation to the braking and formation requirements for the freight train used to undertake the hauling of multiple units with their brakes isolated. Hauling a multiple unit of up to three vehicles coupled together with their brakes isolated is permitted by GERT8000-TW3 and GORT3056-B.
This document provides additional guidance where a multiple unit, consisting of four or more vehicles, is to be moved in its dedicated freight train and that they will not be marshalled into a longer general freight train formation.

GMGN2615 Iss 1 December 2012 (B)
Guidance on the Conventional Rail Locomotives and Passenger Rolling Stock TSI
This document gives guidance on the Conventional Rail Locomotives and Passenger Rolling Stock Technical Specification for interoperability (CR LOC & PAS TSI). The document provides:
a) Advice on the application of the requirements of the CR LOC & PAS TSI in the context of the mainline railway in Great Britain. And
b) Advice on interpretation of points where the CR LOC & PAS TSI is not clear in its intent or where it contains incomplete or obscurely worded requirements.

GMGN2642 Iss 1 February 2008 (B)
Guidance on Wheel / Rail Low Adhesion Measurement
This document provides guidance on the selection of a method for measuring wheel / rail low adhesion. The document assesses the suitability of each of the measurement techniques for undertaking various activities.

GMGN2643 Iss 1 February 2008 (B)
Guidance on Wheel / Rail Low Adhesion Simulation
This document provides information and guidance to enable the selection of the most appropriate artificial contaminant for replicating a low adhesion layer or artificial leaf film and the method that can be employed to implement the use of the selected contaminant.

GMGN2646 Iss 1 March 2011 (A)
Guidance on Axle Bearing Maintenance
This document gives guidance for the maintenance of rail vehicle axle bearings. There is also detailed guidance for the training and competence assessments of personnel and supervisors, who influence, maintain or overhaul axle bearings.

GMGN2650 Iss 1 December 2010 (A)
Guidance on Vehicle Interconnector and Coupling Compatibility
GMGN2650 gives guidance in support of the requirements in GMRT2190 for interconnectors and coupling compatibility.

GMGN2685 Iss 1 December 2010 (A)
Guidance on Lifting, Jacking, Recovery and Emergency Movement of Rail Vehicles
GMGN2685 gives guidance in support of the requirements set out in Part 9 of GMRT2100 for the lifting, jacking, recovery and emergency movement of rail vehicles.
There is an amendment / clarification associated with this document, for details please refer to the 'More Info' on rgsonline or the 'Amendments and Clarifications to Current Documents' section of the RGS Catalogue.

GMGN2686 Iss 1 December 2010 (A)
Guidance on Rail Vehicle Bodyshell, Bogie and Suspension Elements
GMGN2686 gives guidance on the requirements set out in Parts 2, 3 and 4 of GMRT2100 for structural requirements for rail vehicles, structural requirements for rail vehicle bodies and structural elements for bogie and suspension.
There is an amendment / clarification associated with this document, for details please refer to the 'More Info' on rgsonline or the 'Amendments and Clarifications to Current Documents' section of the RGS Catalogue.

GMGN2687 Iss 1 December 2010 (B)
Guidance on Rail Vehicle Interior Structures and Secondary Structural Elements
GMGN2687 gives guidance in support of the requirements set out in Parts 5, 6 and 7 of GMRT2100 for secondary structural elements, rail vehicle elements interfacing with passengers and traincrew and aerodynamic rail vehicle loads.
There is an amendment / clarification associated with this document, for details please refer to the 'More Info' on rgsonline or the 'Amendments and Clarifications to Current Documents' section of the RGS Catalogue.

GMGN2688 Iss 1 December 2010 (A)
Guidance on the Structural Design of Rail Freight Wagons including Rail Tank Wagons
GMGN2688 gives guidance on the structural design of freight wagons and rail tank wagons including specific guidance for the design and construction of tank wagons for the carriage of dangerous goods.
There is an amendment / clarification associated with this document, for details please refer to the 'More Info' on rgsonline or the 'Amendments and Clarifications to Current Documents' section of the RGS Catalogue.

GMGN2689 Iss 2 June 2012 (A)
Guidance on Mechanical Coupling of Rail Vehicles
GMGN2689 gives guidance in support of the requirements in Part 8 of GMRT2100 for the mechanical coupling of rail vehicles. Issue two was produced using the small scale change process to include guidance to support the new requirement for couplings included in GMRT2100 issue five.

GMGN2695 Iss 1 December 2010 (A)
Guidance on Testing of Wheel Slide Protection Systems Fitted on Rail Vehicles
This document has been produced to supplement the Wheel Slide Protection (WSP) testing requirements set out in BS EN 15595:2009. It provides guidance for a WSP testing programme to evaluate WSP system performance for use primarily on passenger rail vehicles operating on the GB mainline network with representative GB mainline network adhesion conditions. The principles of the document could be applied to WSP equipment fitted to other rail vehicles.

MANUAL

None

FORMS

Form RT8250 Iss 3 September 2011
Urgent Safety-Related Defect Report Form
Form specified in GERT8250 to be used to notify National Control Centre at Milton Keynes by fax of an urgent NIR, to be used in the unlikely event that the computer system is not functioning.

OTHER

PS305-4 Iss 1 January 2001 (A)
Specification for Vehicle Acceptance and Conformance Certification Bodies
PS305-04 supersedes from 1 March 2001, these documents PS305-01, PS305-02 and PS305-03.
The document PS305-04 is an amalgamation of the three PS305 standards and specifies in one document both Vehicle Acceptance Body and Conformance Certification Body requirements for operating the process for Engineering Acceptance of Rail Vehicles.
The opportunity has also been taken to further clarify sections B 4.1, 4.1.1 & 4.1.2. and the changes within Railtrack, specifically the transition of Railtrack Safety & Standards Directorate to Railway Safety.
Further incorporated into the standard is a new section, Part C 7.0, to cover the production and maintenance of a Continued Professional Development Log by approved signatories.

RST ASSESSMENT

Assessment of Rolling Stock for conformity with RGS (Previously known as Engineering Acceptance)
All documents in the Rolling Stock section of the Catalogue are relevant to this section but have not been duplicated here. This (Assessment) section also includes documents not forming part of the Rolling Stock section, but which contain mandatory requirements, guidance and other information relevant to the assessment of Rolling Stock for conformity with Railway Group Standards. See also Technical Notes in the Related Documents section.

Control Command and Signalling

GEGN8526 Iss 1
Guidance on Safety Requirements for Cab Signalling Systems

GEGN8618 Iss 1
Guidance on Mechanical Trainstop System

GERC8517 Iss 1
Recommendations for Systems for the Supervision of Enhanced Permissible Speeds and Tilt Enable

GERT8012 Iss 1
Controlling the Speed of Tilting Trains through Curves

GERT8015 Iss 1
Electromagnetic Compatibility between Railway Infrastructure and Trains

GERT8018 Iss 2
Mechanical Trainstop System Interface

GERT8019 Iss 1
Tilting Trains: Controlling Tilt Systems to Maintain Clearances

GERT8026 Iss 1
Safety Requirements for Cab Signalling Systems

GERT8030 Iss 4
Requirements for the Train Protection and Warning System (TPWS)

GERT8035 Iss 2
Automatic Warning System (AWS)

GERT8060 Iss 2
Engineering Requirements for Dispatch of Trains from Platforms

GERT8080 Iss 1
Train Radio Systems for Voice and Related Messaging Communications

GERT8081 Iss 1
Requirements for GSM-R Voice Radio System

GERT8082 Iss 1
GSM-R Cab Mobile, Great Britain Open Interface Requirements (Rapid Response)

GKRT0036 Iss 2
Transitions Between Signalling Systems

GKRT0054 Iss 1
Radio Electronic Token Block

Plant

GMGN2575 Iss 2
Guidance on the Engineering Acceptance of On-Track Machines

GMRT2307 Iss 1
Self Contained Electrical Power Supply Systems Fitted to Infrastructure Support Vehicles

GMRT2400 Iss 4
Engineering Design of On-Track Machines

Infrastructure

GCRC5521 Iss 1
Calculation of Enhanced Permissible Speeds for Tilting Trains

GCRT5021 Iss 5
Track System Requirements

GEGN8573 Iss 3
Guidance on Gauging

GERT8006 Iss 2
Assessment of Compatibility of Rail Vehicle Weights and Underline Bridges

GERT8073 Iss 2
Requirements for the Application of Standard Vehicle Gauges

GIRT7016 Iss 4
Interface between Station Platforms, Track and Trains

Traffic Operation and Management

None

Energy

GERT8023 Iss 1
Compatibility Between Electric Trains and Electrification Systems

GERT8025 Iss 1
Electrical Protective Provisions for Electrified Lines

GMRT1041 Iss 1
Warning Signs and Notices for Electrified Lines

Uncontrolled When Printed

RAILWAY GROUP STANDARDS

GCRT5021 Iss 5 December 2011 (A)
Track System Requirements
This document mandates requirements for track geometry, track system, track components and switches and crossings (S&C) to provide for the safe guidance and support of rail vehicles.
This document contains 'open points', that is, requirements that have not yet been specified, but which are within scope of the document.

GCRT5033 Iss 2 December 2007 (A)
Terminal Tracks - Requirements for Buffer Stops, Arresting Devices and End Impact Walls
This document sets out requirements for buffer stops, arresting devices and end walls for terminal tracks.

GCRT5112 Iss 2 December 2008 (A)
Rail Traffic Loading Requirements for the Design of Railway Structures
This document sets out the minimum rail traffic loading requirements to be considered in the design of new, reconstructed, altered, and temporary railway structures.

GCRT5212 Iss 1 February 2003 (A)
Requirements for Defining and Maintaining Clearances
This document mandates requirements for monitoring and maintaining clearances. It also mandates requirements for new, altered and temporary infrastructure relating to clearances; gauging conditions for passage of exceptional loads; standard vehicle gauges; and data relating to gauging and clearances, to be provided to Railway Group members and their suppliers.
There is an amendment / clarification associated with this document, for details please refer to the 'More Info' on rgsonline or the 'Amendments and Clarifications to Current Documents' section of the RGS Catalogue.

GERT8006 Iss 2 September 2010 (A)
Assessment of Compatibility of Rail Vehicle Weights and Underline Bridges
This document mandates specific requirements for the assessment of compatibility between the static load characteristics of rail vehicles and the capacity of underline bridges to carry the vertical static and dynamic loads imposed by the rail vehicles.
There is an amendment / clarification associated with this document, for details please refer to the 'More Info' on rgsonline or the 'Amendments and Clarifications to Current Documents' section of the RGS Catalogue.

GERT8073 Iss 2 October 2009 (B)
Requirements for the Application of Standard Vehicle Gauges
The gauges defined in this document are not intended to be exhaustive. However, as new gauges are developed, they should be proposed for inclusion within this document to ensure consistent application by railway undertaking and infrastructure managers.

GIRT7016 Iss 4 September 2010 (A)
Interface between Station Platforms, Track and Trains
This document mandates requirements for the design and maintenance of station platforms for their safe interface with trains.
There is an amendment / clarification associated with this document, for details please refer to the 'More Info' on rgsonline or the 'Amendments and Clarifications to Current Documents' section of the RGS Catalogue.

GIRT7019 Iss 1 December 2007 (A)
Safety in Railway Tunnels - Requirements for Lighting
This document mandates requirements for tunnel lighting systems. This document will eventually form part of a larger document having the same scope as the Safety in Rail Tunnels TSI.

RAIL INDUSTRY STANDARDS

RIS-7700-INS Iss 1 December 2007 (A)
Rail Industry Standard for Station Infrastructure
This document is a voluntary standard, produced by RSSB on behalf of the industry. Duty holders may choose to mandate it through internal instructions / procedures or contract conditions. It replaces previously mandatory requirements from GERT8005 Fire Safety of Materials at Operational Premises, GIRT7014 Infrastructure Requirements at Stations, GMRT1201 Escalators & Passenger Conveyors on Railway Stations and GMRT1251 Escalators & Passenger Conveyors - Registration & Periodic Examination Details & Records, and recommendations from GERC8505 Recommendations for the Fire Safety of Materials at Operational Premises. Railway Group Standard GIRT7016 sets out mandatory requirements for station infrastructure. The requirements set out in GIRT7016 have not been duplicated in this document.

RIS-7701-INS Iss 1 March 2011 (A)
Rail Industry Standard for Automatic Ticket Gates at Stations
This document provides a voluntary standard on automatic ticket gates (ATGs) at stations, for the infrastructure managers responsible for managing and operating stations, to use if they so choose. It sets out requirements for planning, design, installation and commissioning and operation and management of ATGs.

CODES OF PRACTICE

GCRC5521 Iss 1 June 2001 (B)
Calculation of Enhanced Permissible Speeds for Tilting Trains
This Railway Safety Approved Code of Practice sets out an approved method of calculating enhanced permissible speeds for tilting trains. It supports section 5.2.3 of Railway Group Standard GCRT5021 and section 6.1.5 of Railway Group Standard GERT8012. It also provides a means of meeting the requirement for an assessment of the risk of roll-over in gales set out in Railway Group Standard GMRT2142.

GCRC5633 Iss 2 December 2007 (A)
Recommendations for the Risk Assessment of Buffer Stops, Arresting Devices and End Impact Walls
This document gives details of a recommended method which, if followed, would meet the requirements of section 2.4 of Railway Group Standard GCRT5033 Terminal Tracks - Requirements for Buffer Stops, Arresting Devices and End Impact Walls to assess their adequacy.

GUIDANCE NOTES

GEGN8573 Iss 3 October 2009 (B)
Guidance on Gauging
This document provides information and advisory material in support of the application of the various Railway Group Standards covering gauging. It also provides background material on the original derivation of the vehicle gauges in common use, as well as a brief introduction to the UIC (International Union of Railways) method of gauge analysis in use throughout Europe (and mandated in the Technical Specifications for Interoperability).

GIGN7520 Iss 1 December 2007 (A)
Guidance on Lighting of Railway Premises
The guidance in this document is adapted from the previously mandatory requirements set out in GIRT7010 issue 1, Lighting of Railway Premises, sections C1 to C6, C10 to C12 and C14 to C19. GIRT7010 has been withdrawn as many of the measures it contained did not meet the risk scope test set out in the Railway Group Standards Code. However, it documented some advice which it was considered worth continuing to make available in the form of this Guidance Note.

GIGN7616 Iss 1 December 2010 (B)
Guidance on Station Platform Geometry
This document gives guidance on interpreting the requirements of Railway Group Standard GIRT7016, relating to platform geometry and specifically supports parts 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7 and 11. There is no guidance to support Parts 8, 9, 10 and 12 of GIRT7016. Guidance is also set out on relevant Technical Specifications for Interoperability relating to platform geometry.

MANUAL

None

FORMS

None

OTHER

None

RULEBOOK MODULES

GE/RT Rulebook Modules. Rule Books and associated forms are available from Willsons Printers, telephone: 01636 702334

GERT8000-AC Iss 2 September 2011 (W)
AC electrified lines
You will need this module if you carry out the duties of a train driver, guard, shunter, designated person (DP), signaller, crossing keeper or person in charge of sidings in AC electrified areas.

GERT8000-AM ERTMS Iss 1 October 2009 (W)
ERTMS Amendments Module
Rule Book module GERT8000-AM ERTMS contains new ERTMS amendments published for the first time that do not justify the reissue of the module. These rules are specifically for use during the ERTMS pilot on the Cambrian Lines. The implementation date for these rules will be advised locally.
There is an amendment / clarification associated with this document, for details please refer to the 'More Info' on rgsonline or the 'Amendments and Clarifications to Current Documents' section of the RGS Catalogue.

SUPERSEDED
GERT8000-AM Iss 15 September 2012 (W)
AM Amendments module
This module will contain those amendments previously published in the Periodical Operating Notice. It will also contain amendments published for the first time and amendments that do not justify the reissue of the module concerned.
Superseded by GERT8000-AM Iss 16.
Document ceases to be in force from June 2013.

NEW
GERT8000-AM Iss 16 March 2013 (W)
AM Amendments module
This module contains amendments to other Rule Book modules in the GERT8000 series. You will need this module if you are issued with any Rule Book module.
Supersedes GERT8000-AM Iss 15. Document comes into force June 2013.

GERT8000-DC Iss 2 September 2011 (W)
DC electrified lines
You will need this module if you carry out the duties of a train driver, guard, shunter, designated person (DP), signaller or crossing keeper in DC electrified areas.

GERT8000-G1 Iss 4 April 2010 (W)
General safety responsibilities and personal track safety for non-track workers
You will need this module if you carry out the duties of a train driver, a guard, a shunter, a designated person (DP), a signaller or a crossing keeper.

GERT8000-HB1 Iss 2 September 2011 (W)
General duties and track safety for track workers
This handbook is for those personnel who need to go on the operational railway to carry out their duties.

GERT8000-HB10 Iss 1 September 2010 (W)
Duties of the COSS and person in charge when using a hand trolley
You will need this handbook if you are the COSS or person in charge when using a hand trolley.

GERT8000-HB11 Iss 2 September 2012 (W)
Duties of the person in charge of the possession (PICOP)
You will need this handbook if you carry out the duties of the PICOP.

GERT8000-HB12 Iss 2 September 2012 (W)
Duties of the engineering supervisor (ES)
You will need this handbook if you carry out the duties of the engineering supervisor.

GERT8000-HB13 Iss 1 March 2011 (W)
Duties of the person in charge of the siding possession (PICOS)
You will need this handbook if you carry out the duties of a PICOS.

GERT8000-HB14 Iss 1 March 2011 (W)
Duties of the person in charge of loading and unloading rail vehicles during engineering work
You will need this handbook if you carry out the duties of the person in charge of loading and unloading rail vehicles during engineering work.

GERT8000-HB15 Iss 2 September 2012 (W)
Duties of the machine controller (MC) and on-track plant operator
You will need this handbook if you carry out the duties of the machine controller (MC) and on-track plant operator.

GERT8000-HB16 Iss 1 September 2011 (W)
AC electrified lines
This handbook is for those personnel who need to go on the operational railway in an AC electrified area to carry out their duties.

GERT8000-HB17 Iss 1 September 2011 (W)
DC electrified lines
This handbook is for those personnel who need to go on the operational railway in a DC electrified area to carry out their duties.

GERT8000-HB18 Iss 1 September 2011 (W)
Duties of a level crossing attendant
You will need this handbook if you carry out the duties of a level crossing attendant.

GERT8000-HB2 Iss 1 April 2010 (W)
Instructions for track workers who use emergency protection equipment
This handbook is for those personnel who need to go on the operational railway to carry out their duties, and have been trained to carry out emergency protection. It does not apply to: train drivers, guards, shunters, signallers, crossing keepers and those who act as a designated person (DP).

GERT8000-HB3 Iss 2 September 2011 (W)
Duties of the lookout and site warden
This handbook is for those personnel who carry out duties of the lookout and site warden.

GERT8000-HB4 Iss 1 April 2010 (W)
Duties of a points operator and route-setting agent - moving and securing points by hand
This handbook is for points operators and route-setting agents who move and secure points by hand.

GERT8000-HB5 Iss 2 September 2011 (W)
Handsignalling duties
This handbook is for those personnel who carry out handsignalling duties.

GERT8000-HB6 Iss 2 March 2012 (A)
General duties of an individual working alone (IWA)
You will need this handbook if you carry out the duties of an individual working alone. This Handbook has been updated to include new rules published in Handbook 11 and 12.

GERT8000-HB7 Iss 2 March 2012 (A)
General duties of a controller of site safety (COSS)
You will need this handbook if you carry out the duties of a controller of site safety (COSS).

GERT8000-HB8 Iss 2 March 2012 (A)
IWA, COSS or PC blocking a line
You will need this handbook if you carry out the duties of a IWA, COSS or PC blocking a line.

GERT8000-HB9 Iss 2 March 2012 (A)
IWA or COSS setting up safe systems of work within possessions
You will need this handbook if you carry out the duties of a IWA or COSS setting up safe systems of work within possessions.

SUPERSEDED
GERT8000-Index Iss 15 September 2012 (W)
Rule Book Index and Glossary
The Rule Book index and glossary is a reference document to help users find the module / handbook and section number of particular rules or subject matter. Explanations of the terms in the Rule Book are set out in the glossary.
Superseded by GERT8000-Index Iss 16.
Document ceases to be in force from June 2013.

NEW
GERT8000-Index Iss 16 March 2013 (W)
Rule Book Index and Glossary
Entries in the index give references to module / sections & handbook / sections. Where the reference is to a module or handbook that is largely devoted to the subject, that reference is in italics and contains the word module or handbook with no section details.
Supersedes GERT8000-Index Iss 15.
Document comes into force June 2013.

GERT8000-Issue HB Iss 3 September 2012 (W)
Rule Book handbook issue history
Rule Book handbook issue history lists the current issue of each handbook.

SUPERSEDED
GERT8000-Issue Iss 20 September 2012 (W)
Rule Book module issue history
Rule Book module issue history lists the current issue of each module.
Superseded by GERT8000-Issue Iss 21.
Document ceases to be in force from June 2013.

NEW
GERT8000-Issue Iss 21
March 2013 (W)
Rule Book module issue history
The module issue history lists the current issue of each document.
Supersedes GERT8000-Issue Iss 20.
Document comes into force June 2013.

GERT8000-M1 Iss 2 March 2012 (A)
Dealing with a train accident or train evacuation
You will need this module if you carry out the duties of a guard, driver or signaller.

GERT8000-M2 Iss 3 March 2012 (A)
Train stopped by train failure
You will need this module if you carry out the duties of a pilotman, driver or signaller.

GERT8000-M3 Iss 1 March 2012 (A)
Managing incidents, floods and snow
You will need this module if you carry out the duties of a driver or signaller.

GERT8000-OTM Iss 4 March 2011 (W)
Working of on-track machines (OTM)
You will need this module if you carry out the duties of a driver of an on-track machine, an operator of an on-track machine or a signaller.

GERT8000-P1 Iss 3 March 2012 (A)
Single line working
You will need this module if you carry out the duties of a pilotman, driver or signaller.

GERT8000-P2 ERTMS Iss 1 October 2009 (W)
Working single and bi-directional ERTMS lines by pilotman
Rule Book module GERT8000-P2 ERTMS sets out the requirements for the pilotman, signallers and drivers when the normal operation of a single or bi-directional ERTMS line cannot be maintained. These rules are specifically for use during the ERTMS pilot on the Cambrian Lines. The implementation date for these rules will be advised locally.
There is an amendment / clarification associated with this document, for details please refer to the 'More Info' on rgsonline or the 'Amendments and Clarifications to Current Documents' section of the RGS Catalogue.

GERT8000-P2 Iss 3 March 2012 (A)
Working single and bi-directional lines by pilotman
You will need this module if you carry out the duties of a pilotman, driver or signaller.

GERT8000-PoSA Iss 1 March 2011 (W)
Proceed-on-Sight Authority (PoSA)
These instructions are additional to all other Rule Book modules. They apply only where PoSA signals are provided. You will need this module if your duties require you to identify and understand the meaning of PoSA signals.

SUPERSEDED
GERT8000-PPBL Iss 1
September 2011 (W)
Pink Pages briefing leaflet
The Pink Pages briefing leaflet contains details on changes made to the working manual for rail staff handling and carriage of dangerous goods in December 2011.
Superseded by GORT3053-PPBL Iss 2.
Document ceases to be in force from June 2013.

GERT8000-RBBL ERTMS Iss 1
June 2010 (W)
Rule Book briefing leaflet ERTMS modules
The Rule Book briefing leaflet for ERTMS issue 1 contains details of the 10 new modules introduced for ERTMS.

SUPERSEDED
GERT8000-RBBL Iss 23
September 2012 (W)
Rule Book briefing leaflet
The Rule Book briefing leaflet contains details on the changes made to the Rule Book (GERT8000) that come into force in December 2012.
Superseded by GERT8000-RBBL Iss 24.
Document ceases to be in force from June 2013.

NEW
GERT8000-RBBL Iss 24
March 2013 (W)
Rule Book briefing leaflet
The Rule Book briefing leaflet is updated on a six monthly basis to align with any Rule Book (GERT8000) changes within that period. This issue sees changes to GERT8000-SS1 and GERT8000-SS2.
Supersedes GERRT8000-RBBL Iss 23.
Document comes into force June 2013.

Uncontrolled When Printed

GERT8000-S1 Iss 1 June 2003 (W)
Signals and indicators controlling train movements
Rule Book module GERT8000-S1 explains the meaning of signals, associated indicators and how to identify them.

GERT8000-S2 Iss 1 June 2003 (W)
Observing and obeying fixed signals
Rule Book module GERT8000-S2 sets out the requirements for drivers, signallers and persons controlling train movements who need to observe and act upon the signal indications applicable to them.

GERT8000-S3 Iss 3 October 2008 (W)
Train warning systems (AWS and TPWS) and reporting signalling failures and irregularities
Rule Book module GERT8000-S3 sets out the requirements for train crew, signallers, signalling technicians and other associated staff involved with train warning systems (AWS and TPWS) and the reporting of signalling failures and irregularities.
Issue 3 consolidates instructions previously published in the Periodical Operations Notice and the module AM. Full details of changes to module S3 can be found in the Rule Book briefing leaflet for changes coming into force in December 2008.

GERT8000-S4 ERTMS Iss 1 October 2009 (W)
Trains or shunting movements detained, or vehicles left, on ERTMS running lines
Rule Book module GERT8000-S4 ERTMS sets out the requirements for drivers, shunters and signallers when a train is detained at a signal and when vehicles are left on an ERTMS running line. These rules are specifically for use during the ERTMS pilot on the Cambrian Lines. The implementation date for these rules will be advised locally.

GERT8000-S4 Iss 3 October 2008 (W)
Trains or shunting movements detained, or vehicles left, on running lines
Rule Book module GERT8000-S4 sets out the requirements for drivers, shunters and signallers when a train is detained at a signal and when vehicles are left on a running line. Issue 3 contains new instructions on permitting the use of mobile phones to contact the signaller. Full details of changes to module S4 can be found in the Rule book briefing leaflet for changes which came into force in December 2008.

GERT8000-S5 ERTMS Iss 1 October 2009 (W)
Passing an end of authority (EOA) without a movement authority (MA)
Rule Book module GERT8000-S5 ERTMS sets out the requirements for drivers and signallers for when an end of authority can be passed without a movement authority. These rules are specifically for use during the ERTMS pilot on the Cambrian Lines. The implementation date for these rules will be advised locally.
There is an amendment / clarification associated with this document, for details please refer to the 'More Info' on rgsonline or the 'Amendments and Clarifications to Current Documents' section of the RGS Catalogue.

GERT8000-S5 Iss 3 April 2010 (W)
Passing a signal at danger
You will need this module if you carry out the duties of a driver, a signaller, a guard or a shunter.

GERT8000-S6 ERTMS Iss 1 October 2009 (W)
ERTMS cab signalling
Rule Book module GERT8000-S6 ERTMS sets out the requirements for drivers, signallers, shunters and persons controlling train movements when working trains over ERTMS lines. The module contains instructions and descriptions of block markers and other track equipment, on board equipment and signalling equipment, entering and exiting ERTMS fitted areas, stopping at an end of authority, withdrawal of a movement authority, ERTMS failures and Written Orders.
There is an amendment / clarification associated with this document, for details please refer to the 'More Info' on rgsonline or the 'Amendments and Clarifications to Current Documents' section of the RGS Catalogue.

GERT8000-SP ERTMS Iss 1 October 2009 (W)
Speeds (ERTMS lines)
Rule Book module GERT8000-SP ERTMS sets out the duties of drivers and signallers when dealing with speed restrictions on ERTMS lines. It also contains instructions for the person responsible for setting up temporary or emergency speed restrictions on an ERTMS line. These rules are specifically for use during the ERTMS pilot on the Cambrian Lines. The implementation date for these rules will be advised locally.

GERT8000-SP Iss 3 April 2008 (W)
Speeds
Rule Book module GERT8000-SP sets out the requirements for recognising lineside speed signs and the duties of drivers and signallers when dealing with speed restrictions on the line. This module also affects people who are responsible for setting up temporary and emergency speed restrictions.
Issue 3 contains amendments previously published in module AM (amendment Nos AM4/09 and AM4/10). There are also new changes which removes the need for the signaller to advise drivers of an ESR even though it has not been published in a special notice.

SUPERSEDED
GERT8000-SS1 Iss 2 October 2007 (W)
Station duties and train dispatch
Rule Book module GERT8000-SS1 sets out the requirements for staff who have the responsibility for the safety of the public and staff on stations and have the duty for the dispatch of trains from a platform. The reissue of module SS1 will incorporate changes which were previously published in module AM and the Periodical Operating Notice (PON).
Superseded by GERT8000-SS1 Iss 3.
Document ceases to be in force from June 2013.

NEW
GERT8000-SS1 Iss 3 March 2013 (W)
Station duties and train dispatch
You will need this module if you carry out the duties of a driver, a guard, a person in charge (PIC) of platform or staff responsible for train dispatch or the safety of the public and staff on stations.
Supersedes GERT8000-SS1 Iss 2.
Document comes into force June 2013.

SUPERSEDED
GERT8000-SS2 Iss 2 April 2008 (W)
Shunting
Rule Book module GERT8000-SS2 sets out the requirements for train crew, shunters and signallers who have the responsibility for carrying out shunting duties.
Issue two contains an amendment previously published in module AM (amendment No AM3/10). There are also new changes on instructions regarding propelling.
Superseded by GERT8000-SS2 Iss 3.
Document ceases to be in force from June 2013.

NEW
GERT8000-SS2 Iss 3 March 2013 (W)
Shunting
You will need this module if you carry out the duties of a driver, shunter or signaller.
Supersedes GERT8000-SS2 Iss 2.
Document comes into force June 2013.

GERT8000-T10 Iss 2 September 2010 (W)
Duties of a designated person (DP) and people working on rail vehicles
You will need this module if you carry out the duties of a designated person and people working on a rail vehicle.

GERT8000-T11 ERTMS Iss 1 October 2009 (W)
Movement of engineering trains and on-track plant under T3 ERTMS arrangements
Rule Book module GERT8000-T11 ERTMS sets out the requirements for signallers, a person in charge of possession (PICOP), engineering supervisor, driver / operator of an engineering train or OTM, shunter and a person in charge of movements, unloading and loading of rail vehicles within a T3 ERTMS possession. These rules are specifically for use during the ERTMS pilot on the Cambrian Lines. The implementation date for these rules will be advised locally.
There is an amendment / clarification associated with this document, for details please refer to the 'More Info' on rgsonline or the 'Amendments and Clarifications to Current Documents' section of the RGS Catalogue.

GERT8000-T1A Iss 2 October 2007 (W)
Work on signalling equipment
The reissue of T1A is the culmination of a thorough review of the instructions associated with the signaller and the technician when signalling equipment has become inoperative because of a failure or it is being maintained.

GERT8000-T1B Iss 3 April 2010 (W)
Movement of trains during failure of, or when working on, signalling equipment
You will need this module if you carry out the duties of a signaller or an operations controller.

GERT8000-T2 ERTMS Iss 1 October 2009 (W)
Protecting engineering work or a hand trolley on an ERTMS line not under possession
Rule Book module GERT8000-T2 ERTMS sets out the requirements for signallers, controllers of site safety (COSS), individual working alone (IWA) and protection controller (PC) in protecting engineering work or a hand trolley on an ERTMS line not under possession. These rules are specifically for use during the ERTMS pilot on the Cambrian Lines. The implementation date for these rules will be advised locally.
There is an amendment / clarification associated with this document, for details please refer to the 'More Info' on rgsonline or the 'Amendments and Clarifications to Current Documents' section of the RGS Catalogue.

GERT8000-T3 ERTMS Iss 1 October 2009 (W)
Possession of an ERTMS line for engineering work
Rule book module GERT8000-T3 ERTMS sets out the requirements for signallers, person in charge of a possession (PICOP) and engineering supervisor in making the arrangements for a possession of an ERTMS line for engineering work.
There is an amendment / clarification associated with this document, for details please refer to the 'More Info' on rgsonline or the 'Amendments and Clarifications to Current Documents' section of the RGS Catalogue.

GERT8000-T3 Iss 3 March 2011 (W)
Possession of a running line for engineering work
You will need this module if you carry out the duties of a driver or a signaller.

GERT8000-TS1 Iss 7 September 2012 (W)
General signalling regulations
You will need this module if you carry out the duties of a signaller.

GERT8000-TS10 ERTMS Iss 1 October 2009 (W)
ERTMS level 2 train signalling regulations
Rule Book module GERT8000-TS10 ERTMS sets out the requirements for signallers operating signalling equipment under ERTMS level 2 train method of signalling. These rules are specifically for use during the ERTMS pilot on the Cambrian Lines. The implementation date for these rules will be advised locally.
There is an amendment / clarification associated with this document, for details please refer to the 'More Info' on rgsonline or the 'Amendments and Clarifications to Current Documents' section of the RGS Catalogue.

GERT8000-TS2 Iss 3 September 2012 (W)
Track circuit block regulations
Rule Book module GERT8000-TS2 sets out the requirements for signallers operating signalling equipment under the track circuit block method of signalling.

GERT8000-TS3 Iss 4 September 2012 (W)
Absolute block regulations
Rule Book module GERT8000-TS3 sets out the requirements for signallers operating signalling under the absolute block method of signalling.

GERT8000-TS4 Iss 3 September 2012 (W)
Electric token block regulations
Rule Book module GERT8000-TS4 sets out the requirements for signallers operating signalling equipment under the electric token block method of signalling.

GERT8000-TS5 Iss 3 September 2012 (W)
Tokenless block regulations
Rule Book module GERT8000-TS5 sets out the requirements for signallers operating signalling equipment under the tokenless block method of signalling.

GERT8000-TS7 Iss 3 September 2012 (W)
No-signaller token regulations
Rule Book module GERT8000-TS7 sets out the requirements for signallers operating signalling equipment under the no-signaller token method of signalling.

GERT8000-TS8 Iss 3 September 2012 (W)
One-train working regulations
Rule Book module GERT8000-TS8 sets out the requirements for signallers operating signalling equipment under the one train working method of signalling.

GERT8000-TS9 Iss 2 September 2011 (W)
Level crossings - signallers' regulations
You will need this module if you carry out the duties of a signaller in an area where there is a level crossing.

GERT8000-TW1 Iss 8 October 2008 (W)
Preparation and movement of trains: General
Rule Book module GERT8000-TW1 sets out the requirements for train crew, signallers and other associate staff involved in the general day to day operations in the preparation and movement of trains.
Issue eight contains new instructions on hauling dead traction units, running brake tests, passenger communication apparatus and authority for permissive working. Full details of changes to module TW1 can be found in the Rule Book briefing leaflet for changes coming into force in December 2008.

GERT8000-TW2 Iss 3 April 2007 (W)
Preparation and movement of multiple-unit passenger trains
Rule Book module TW2 sets out the requirements for train crew, signallers and other associated staff involved with the day preparation and operation of multiple-unit passenger trains. The reissue of module TW2 features changes regarding defective slam and power operated doors.

GERT8000-TW3 Iss 2 November 2004 (W)
Preparation and movement of locomotive hauled trains (including HSTs, push-pull, postal, parcels)
Rule Book module GERT8000-TW3 sets out the requirements for train crew and relevant train operating staff, operations controllers and signallers involved with the preparation and movement of locomotive-hauled trains.

GERT8000-TW5 Iss 3 April 2008 (W)
Preparation and movement of trains. Defective or isolated vehicles and on-train equipment
TW5 - Sets out the requirements for staff dealing with the effects and related actions associated with defective or isolated on-train equipment. Issue three contains new instructions as a result of changes to requirements contained in GORT3437, Defective On-Train Equipment.

GERT8000-TW6 Iss 2 April 2008 (W)
Working single lines with or without a train staff or token
Rule Book module GERT8000-TW6 sets out the requirements for drivers who work over lines signalled by the following systems: one-train working where a train staff is provided, one-train working where a train staff is not provided, electric token or no-signaller token. Issue two contains amendments previously published in module AM (amendment Nos AM1/75, AM1/76, AM1/77, AM5/28, AM5/29, AM5/30 and AM5/31).

GERT8000-TW7 Iss 3 March 2012 (A)
Wrong-direction movements
You will need this module if you carry out the duties of a driver or signaller.

GERT8000-TW8 ERTMS Iss 1 February 2010 (W)
Level crossings on ERTMS lines
Rule Book module GERT8000-TW8 ERTMS sets out the requirements for train crew and level crossing attendants involved in the operation and use of level crossings on ERTMS lines.
There is an amendment / clarification associated with this document, for details please refer to the 'More Info' on rgsonline or the 'Amendments and Clarifications to Current Documents' section of the RGS Catalogue.

GERT8000-TW8 Iss 5 September 2011 (W)
Level crossings - drivers' instructions
You will need this module if you carry out the duties of a driver.

RAILWAY GROUP STANDARDS

SUPERSEDED
GERT8001 Iss 36 December 2012 (A)
Changes to National Operations Publications for December 2012
This document is primarily used to publish minor changes to National Operations Publications. Included in this issue are amendments to GERT8000-TS2 Iss 3, GERT8000-TS3 Iss 4 and GORT3053-App 1 Iss 5.
Superseded by GERT8001 Iss 37. Document ceases to be in force from March 2013.

NEW
GERT8001 Iss 37 March 2013 (W)
Changes to National Operations Publications for March 2013
This document is primarily used to publish minor changes to National Operations Publications.
Supersedes GERT8001 Iss 36. Document comes into force March 2013.

GERT8040 Iss 2 February 2009 (A)
Low Adhesion between the Wheel and the Rail-Managing the Risk
This document mandates the actions required to identify and plan the mitigation of conditions of low adhesion between the wheel and the rail.

GERT8046 Iss 2 October 2007 (A)
Spoken Safety Communications
This document defines the requirements for spoken safety communications between people employed by the infrastructure manager and railway undertakings, specifically regarding the safe movement of trains.
There is an amendment / clarification associated with this document, for details please refer to the 'More Info' on rgsonline or the 'Amendments and Clarifications to Current Documents' section of the RGS Catalogue.

GERT8047 Iss 5 March 2011 (A)
Reporting of Safety Related Information
This document mandates the requirements for reporting safety related information by means of the Safety Management Information System (SMIS), so that reliable safety data is collected, analysed and made available for use by rail industry parties in the management of risk.

GERT8054 Iss 2 September 2011 (A)
Management of Shared Information Systems
This document mandates joint responsibility of infrastructure managers and railway undertakings to determine whether or not a system has material safety implications, and if it does whether it is also a shared system. In this case, each infrastructure manager and railway undertaking shall report the material safety implication that they have identified to the System Management Group (SMG) they belong to.

SUPERSEDED
GERT8070 Iss 2 December 2008 (A)
Testing Railway Safety Critical Workers for Drugs and Alcohol
This document mandates common requirements for drug and alcohol testing of staff carrying out safety critical work to be applied by the infrastructure manager and railway undertakings. A new guidance note has been produced to support this document: GEGN8570 Guidance on Management of Drugs and Alcohol.
Superseded by GERT8070 Iss 3. Document ceases to be in force from March 2013.

NEW
GERT8070 Iss 3 December 2012 (A)
Testing Railway Safety Critical Workers for Drugs and Alcohol
GERT8070 mandates common requirements for drug and alcohol testing of staff carrying out safety critical work to be applied by the infrastructure manager and railway undertakings. GERT8070 is supported by guidance material found in GEGN8570.
Supersedes GERT8070 Iss 2. Document comes into force March 2013.

GERT8217 Iss 3 December 2009 (A)
Introduction and Use of Axle Counters - Managing the Risk
This document mandates requirements for managing the introduction and use of axle counters so that operational risks are controlled during planning, implementation and operational stages.
There is an amendment / clarification associated with this document, for details please refer to the 'More Info' on rgsonline or the 'Amendments and Clarifications to Current Documents' section of the RGS Catalogue.

NEW
GORT3053 Iss 4 March 2013 (A)
Working Manual for Rail Staff Handling and Carriage of Dangerous Goods - Contents and Glossary
This working manual is for the use of all staff concerned with the classification, acceptance, identification, marshalling, movement and loading of dangerous goods. This document was previously published as GORM3053 and is now renumbered to GORT3053 to align it with other sections contained within this manual.
Supersedes GORM3053 Iss 3. Document comes into force June 2013.

NEW
GORT3053-1 Iss 6 March 2013 (A)
Working Manual for Rail Staff Handling and Carriage of Dangerous Goods - Appendix 1 - List of Dangerous Goods with their United Nations Number, Dangerous Goods Class and TOPS Commodity Code
The Working Manual for Rail Staff Handling and Carriage of Dangerous Goods is for the use of all staff concerned with the classification, acceptance, identification, marshalling, movement and loading of dangerous goods. This section is carried forward as Appendix 1, with a revised document reference of GORT3053-1.
Supersedes GORT3053-App 1 Iss 5.
Document comes into force June 2013.

NEW
GORT3053-2 Iss 5 March 2013 (A)
Working Manual for Rail Staff Handling and Carriage of Dangerous Goods - Appendix 2 - Bulk Traffic Dangerous Goods, Wagon and Container Separation Distance Requirements / Prohibitions
The Working Manual for Rail Staff Handling and Carriage of Dangerous Goods is for the use of all staff concerned with the classification, acceptance, identification, marshalling, movement and loading of dangerous goods. This document is carried forward as Appendix 2, with a revised document reference of GORT3053-2.
Supersedes GORT3053-App 2 Iss 4.
Document comes into force June 2013.

SUPERSEDED
GORT3053-A Iss 3 September 2011 (W)
Working Manual for Rail Staff, Handling and Carriage of Dangerous Goods - Section A - Classification, Acceptance and Identification
Section A of the Working Manual for Rail Staff, Handling and Carriage of Dangerous Goods.
Superseded by GORT3053-A Iss 4. Document ceases to be in force from June 2013.

NEW
GORT3053-A Iss 4 March 2013 (A)
Working Manual for Rail Staff Handling and Carriage of Dangerous Goods - Classification, Acceptance and Identification
The Working Manual for Rail Staff Handling and Carriage of Dangerous Goods is for the use of all staff concerned with the classification, acceptance, identification, marshalling, movement and loading of dangerous goods.
This section has been updated to align with the International Carriage of Dangerous Goods by Rail (RID). In addition, the Dangerous Goods Working Group (DGWG) established that it would be beneficial to make some minor changes to this section, specifically A3.1 relating to the use of the dummy UN number 8989. This amendment is not intended to change the circumstances in which UN8989 should be used, but is intended to improve the clarity of the instruction.
Supersedes GORT3053-A Iss 3. Document comes into force June 2013.

SUPERSEDED
GORT3053-App 1 Iss 5 September 2011 (W)
Working Manual for Rail Staff, Handling and Carriage of Dangerous Goods - Appendix 1 - List of Dangerous Goods with their United Nations Number, Dangerous Goods Class and TOPS Commodity Code
Appendix 1 of the Working Manual for Rail Staff, Handling and Carriage of Dangerous Goods.
Superseded by GORT3053-1 Iss 6. Document ceases to be in force from June 2013.

SUPERSEDED
GORT3053-App 2 Iss 4 September 2011 (W)
Working Manual for Rail Staff, Handling and Carriage of Dangerous Goods - Appendix 2 - Bulk Traffic Dangerous Goods Wagon and Container Separation Distance Requirements / Prohibitions
Appendix 2 of the Working Manual for Rail Staff, Handling and Carriage of Dangerous Goods.
Superseded by GORT3053-2 Iss 5. Document ceases to be in force from June 2013.

SUPERSEDED
GORT3053-B Iss 3 September 2011 (W)
Working Manual for Rail Staff, Handling and Carriage of Dangerous Goods - Section B - Hazard Identification
Section B of the Working Manual for Rail Staff, Handling and Carriage of Dangerous Goods.
Superseded by GORT3053-B Iss 4. Document ceases to be in force from June 2013.

NEW
GORT3053-B Iss 4 March 2013 (A)
Working Manual for Rail Staff Handling and Carriage of Dangerous Goods - Hazard Identification
The Working Manual for Rail Staff Handling and Carriage of Dangerous Goods is for the use of all staff concerned with the classification, acceptance, identification, marshalling, movement and loading of dangerous goods. This section has been updated to align with the International Carriage of Dangerous Goods by Rail (RID).
Supersedes GORT3053-B Iss 3. Document comes into force June 2013.

SUPERSEDED
GORT3053-C Iss 3 September 2011 (W)
Working Manual for Rail Staff, Handling and Carriage of Dangerous Goods - Section C - Marshalling, Movement and Loading
Section C of the Working Manual for Rail Staff, Handling and Carriage of Dangerous Goods.
Superseded by GORT3053-C Iss 4. Document ceases to be in force from June 2013.

NEW
GORT3053-C Iss 4 March 2013 (A)
Working Manual for Rail Staff Handling and Carriage of Dangerous Goods - Marshalling, Movement and Loading
The Working Manual for Rail Staff Handling and Carriage of Dangerous Goods is for the use of all staff concerned with the classification, acceptance, identification, marshalling, movement and loading of dangerous goods.
This document has been amended to permit the movement of toxic gases not in bulk in driver only operated trains.
Supersedes GORT3053-C Iss 3. Document comes into force June 2013.

GORT3053-D Iss 3 September 2011 (W)
Working Manual for Rail Staff, Handling and Carriage of Dangerous Goods - Section D - Dangerous Goods Facility Instructions
Section D of the Working Manual for Rail Staff, Handling and Carriage of Dangerous Goods.

GORT3053-E Iss 3 September 2011 (W)
Working Manual for Rail Staff, Handling and Carriage of Dangerous Goods - Section E - NOT USED
Section E of the Working Manual for Rail Staff, Handling and Carriage of Dangerous Goods is no longer used.

SUPERSEDED
GORT3053-F Iss 4 September 2011 (W)
Working Manual for Rail Staff, Handling and Carriage of Dangerous Goods - Section F - Fires and Incidents Involving Dangerous Goods
Section F of the Working Manual for Rail Staff, Handling and Carriage of Dangerous Goods.
Superseded by GORT3053-F Iss 5. Document ceases to be in force from June 2013.

NEW
GORT3053-F Iss 5 March 2013 (A)
Working Manual for Rail Staff Handling and Carriage of Dangerous Goods - Fires and Incidents Involving Dangerous Goods
The Working Manual for Rail Staff Handling and Carriage of Dangerous Goods is for the use of all staff concerned with the classification, acceptance, identification, marshalling, movement and loading of dangerous goods.
This document has been amended to permit the movement of toxic gases not in bulk on driver only operated trains.
Supersedes GORT3053-F Iss 4. Document comes into force June 2013.

GORT3053-G Iss 3 September 2011 (W)
Working Manual for Rail Staff, Handling and Carriage of Dangerous Goods - Section G - Emergency Transhipment of Dangerous Goods
Section G of the Working Manual for Rail Staff, Handling and Carriage of Dangerous Goods.

NEW
GORT3053-PPBL Iss 2 March 2013 (A)
Pink pages Briefing leaflet
The Working Manual for Rail Staff Handling and Carriage of Dangerous Goods is for the use of all staff concerned with the classification, acceptance, identification, marshalling, movement and loading of dangerous goods.
The Pink pages Briefing leaflet contains details on the changes made to the working for rail staff handling and carriage of dangerous goods in June 2013.
This document was first issued as GERT8000-PPBL and has now been renumbered GORT3053-PPBL to correctly align it with the GORT3053 Working Manual.
Supersedes GERT8000-PPBL Iss 1.
Document comes into force June 2013.

NEW
GORT3056 Iss 3 March 2013 (A)
Working Manual for Rail Staff Freight Train Operations - Contents and Glossary
This working manual is for the use of all staff concerned with the acceptance, planning, handling, conveyance, marshalling and movement of freight traffic.
This document was previously published as GORM3056 and is now renumbered to GORT3056 to align with other sections contained within this manual.
Supersedes GORM3056 Iss 2. Document comes into force June 2013.

NEW
GORT3056-1 Iss 2 March 2013 (A)
Working Manual for Rail Staff Freight Train Operations - Appendix 1 - Conversion Chart SLUs - Metres - Feet
The Working Manual for Rail Staff Freight Train Operations (White Pages) is for the use of all staff concerned with the acceptance, planning, handling, conveyance, marshalling and movement of freight traffic.
This section is carried forward as Appendix 1 with a revised reference of GORT3056-1.
Supersedes GORT3056-App A.
Document comes into force June 2013.

NEW
GORT3056-2 Iss 2 March 2013 (A)
Working Manual for Rail Staff Freight Train Operations - Appendix 2 - Exceptional Load Code Words
The Working Manual for Rail Staff Freight Train Operations (White Pages) is for the use of all staff concerned with the acceptance, planning, handling, conveyance, marshalling and movement of freight traffic.
This document is carried forward as Appendix 2, with the addition of the code words relating to out-of-gauge loads, with a revised document reference of GORT3056-2.
Supersedes GORT3053-App B Iss 1.
Document comes into force June 2013.

NEW
GORT3056-3 Iss 1 March 2013 (A)
Working Manual for Rail Staff Freight Train Operations - Appendix 3 - Exceptional Load RT3973 Forms
The Working Manual for Rail Staff Freight Train Operations (White Pages) is for the use of all staff concerned with the acceptance, planning, handling, conveyance, marshalling and movement of freight traffic.
This is a new appendix showing examples of the various Exceptional Load RT3973 forms.
Document comes into force June 2013.

CANCELLED
GORT3056-A Iss 2 December 2003 (W)
Introduction and Classification of Freight Trains
GORT3056-A Iss 2 Dec 2003
Introduction and classification of freight trains. Lists the maximum permitted speed for each freight train classification.
Document ceases to be in force from June 2013.

SUPERSEDED
GORT3056-App A Iss 1 December 2003 (W)
Appendix A. Conversion Chart, SLU's - Metres - Feet
GORT3056-App A Iss 1 Dec 2003.
Conversion chart, Lists the conversion between SLU's, metres and feet.
Superseded by GORT3056-1 Iss 2.
Document ceases to be in force from June 2013.

SUPERSEDED
GORT3056-App B Iss 1 December 2003 (W)
Appendix B. Exceptional Load Code Words
GORT3056-App B Iss 1 Dec 2003.
Exceptional Load Code Words shows a list of code words applicable to movement of exceptional loads set out in sections E and K.
Superseded by GORT3056-2 Iss 2.
Document ceases to be in force from June 2013.

SUPERSEDED
GORT3056-B Iss 2 December 2003 (W)
Marshalling and Composition of Freight Trains
GORT3056-B Iss 2 Dec 2003
Marshalling and Composition of Freight Trains outlines the general braking and marshalling requirements on freight trains.
Superseded by GORT3056-B Iss 3.
Document ceases to be in force from June 2013.

NEW
GORT3056-B Iss 3 March 2013 (A)
Working Manual for Rail Staff Freight Train Operations - Marshalling and Composition of Freight Trains
The Working Manual for Rail Staff Freight Train Operations (White Pages) is for the use of all staff concerned with the acceptance, planning, handling, conveyance, marshalling and movement of freight traffic.
The requirement for the automatic brake to be operative on the last three vehicles of every freight train is revised to the brake requiring to be operative on the last vehicle only. Additionally, the brake force on that vehicle must not be less than the brake force required (as shown in Table E1) for a train of the weight equivalent to the one fitted vehicle and any piped-only vehicles marshalled immediately ahead of it.
Supersedes GORT3056-B Iss 2.
Document comes into force June 2013.

SUPERSEDED
GORT3056-C Iss 2 December 2003 (W)
Principles of Safe Freight Train Operation
GORT3056-C Iss 2, Principles of Safe Freight Train Operation sets out the principles for operating freight trains including preparation, the train document, route availability assessment and special handling / movement restriction and cripple codes.
Superseded by GORT3056-C Iss 3.
Document ceases to be in force from June 2013.

NEW
GORT3056-C Iss 3 March 2013 (A)
Working Manual for Rail Staff Freight Train Operations - Principles of Safe Freight Train Operation
The Working Manual for Rail Staff Freight Train Operations (White Pages) is for the use of all staff concerned with the acceptance, planning, handling, conveyance, marshalling and movement of freight traffic.
The re-issue of the White Pages, the engineering supervisor (ES) will no longer be required to sign or retain a copy of the completed certificate to indicate that the wagons are fit to travel. However, the ES will still be required to sign the certificate if on-track machines are to be conveyed from site in a freight train to indicate that they are fit to travel.
Supersedes GORT3056-C Iss 2.
Document comes into force June 2013.

SUPERSEDED
GORT3056-D Iss 2 December 2003 (W)
Defective Vehicles
GORT3056-D Iss 2 Dec 2003 Defective Vehicles outlines the requirements for dealing with the reporting and identification of defective vehicles.
Superseded by GORT3056-D Iss 3.
Document ceases to be in force from June 2013.

NEW
GORT3056-D Iss 3 March 2013 (A)
Working Manual for Rail Staff Freight Train Operations - Defective Vehicles
The Working Manual for Rail Staff Freight Train Operations (White Pages) is for the use of all staff concerned with the acceptance, planning, handling, conveyance, marshalling and movement of freight traffic.
Some of the contents of this section are covered by GORT3053, with the remainder retained in this section. Defective vehicle labels are now mandated in GORT3436 Information for Safe Train Operation.
Supersedes GORT3056-D Iss 2.
Document comes into force June 2013.

SUPERSEDED
GORT3056-E Iss 2 December 2003 (W)
Movement of Freight Trains
GORT3056-E Iss 2, Movement of Freight Trains sets out the conditions for the movement of freight trains, operation of change-over levers, carrying out enhanced air brake pipe continuity tests, and instructions for movements of exceptional loads.
Superseded by GORT3056-E Iss 3.
Document ceases to be in force from June 2013.

NEW
GORT3056-E Iss 3 March 2013 (A)
Working Manual for Rail Staff Freight Train Operations - Movement of Freight Trains
The Working Manual for Rail Staff Freight Train Operations (White Pages) is for the use of all staff concerned with the acceptance, planning, handling, conveyance, marshalling and movement of freight traffic.
The working instructions for Merry-go-Round (MGR) trains in section E7 are withdrawn along with Table E2, as they no longer operate on the GB main line railway. Forms RT3973xxx are now within the new GORT3056-3.
Supersedes GORT3056-E Iss 2.
Document comes into force June 2013.

CANCELLED
GORT3056-F Iss 2 December 2003 (W)
Incidents
GORT3056-F Iss 2 Dec 2003 Incidents. Gives information additional to that already set out in the Rule Book for dealing with an incident but specific to a freight train.
Document ceases to be in force from June 2013.

CANCELLED
GORT3056-G Iss 2 December 2003 (W)
Safe Loading of Freight Trains
GORT3056-G Iss 2. Part of the Working Manual for Rail Staff: Freight Train Operations GORM3056. Outlines the basic principles for the loading and securing of goods on a freight train.
SupersedesGORT3056-G Iss 1
Document ceases to be in force from June 2013.

CANCELLED
GORT3056-H Iss 1 December 2003 (W)
International Traffic
GORT3056-H Iss 1 International Traffic sets out the requirements for the conveyance of traffic to the continent.
Document ceases to be in force from June 2013.

SUPERSEDED
GORT3056-J Iss 1 December 2003 (W)
Intermodal Traffic
GORT3056-J Iss 1 Intermodal Traffic contains instructions for the conveyance of load units on intermodal services.
Superseded by GORT3056-J Iss 2. Document ceases to be in force from June 2013.

NEW
GORT3056-J Iss 2 March 2013 (A)
Working Manual for Rail Staff Freight Train Operations - Intermodal Traffic
The Working Manual for Rail Staff Freight Train Operations (White Pages) is for the use of all staff concerned with the acceptance, planning, handling, conveyance, marshalling and movement of freight traffic.
This section is retained except for J8 which is a matter for individual companies' instructions.
Supersedes GORT3056-J Iss 1. Document comes into force June 2013.

SUPERSEDED
GORT3056-K Iss 1 December 2003 (W)
Vehicles Requiring Special Conditions of Travel
GORT3056-K Iss 1 Vehicles Requiring Special Conditions of Travel sets out the requirements for conveying vehicles not conforming to the standard loading gauge or for loads which special conditions apply.
Superseded by GORT3056-K Iss 2. Document ceases to be in force from June 2013.

NEW
GORT3056-K Iss 2 March 2013 (A)
Working Manual for Rail Staff Freight Train Operations - Vehicles Requiring Special Conditions of Travel
The Working Manual for Rail Staff Freight Train Operations (White Pages) is for the use of all staff concerned with the acceptance, planning, handling, conveyance, marshalling and movement of freight traffic.
Supersedes GORT3056-K Iss 1. Document comes into force June 2013.

GORT3118 Iss 1 October 2008 (A)
Incident Response Planning & Management
This document identifies interface requirements for enabling a consistent, comprehensive and structured process for rail incident response planning and management.

SUPERSEDED
GORT3119 Iss 2 September 2010 (A)
Accident and Incident Investigation
This document mandates requirements for the investigation of accidents and incidents involving more than one duty holder so that system improvements necessary to prevent or reduce the likelihood of recurrence, or mitigate the consequences, are identified and implemented.
Superseded by GORT3119 Iss 3. Document ceases to be in force from March 2013.

NEW
GORT3119 Iss 3 December 2012 (A)
Accident and Incident Investigation
GORT3119 mandates requirements for the investigation of accidents and incidents involving more than one duty holder so that system improvements necessary to prevent or reduce the likelihood of recurrence, or mitigate the consequences, are identified and implemented. GORT3119 is supported by guidance material found in GOGN3519.
Supersedes GORT3119 Iss 5. Document comes into force March 2013.

GORT3208 Iss 3 August 2007 (A)
Arrangements Concerning the Non-operation of Track Circuits During the Leaf Fall Contamination Period
This document mandates the means of identifying the need for, introduction and subsequent removal of, restrictions to normal operations in the event of significant problems being encountered during the Autumn leaf fall period.

GORT3215 Iss 2 June 2010 (A)
Requirements for the Weekly Operating Notice, Periodical Operating Notice and Sectional Appendix
This document mandates requirements for the production of information related to engineering work, alterations to track and signalling arrangements, local operating instructions and localised amendments to National Operations Publications.
This document contains requirements that are amended under the Railway Group Standards Code (Issue Three) as a small scale change. Reference to the amended requirements is made in the Issue Record. All other parts of the document are unchanged from the previous issue.
There is an amendment / clarification associated with this document, for details please refer to the 'More Info' on rgsonline or the 'Amendments and Clarifications to Current Documents' section of the RGS Catalogue.

GORT3279 Iss 7 September 2012 (A)
High Visibility Clothing
This document mandates the minimum requirements for high visibility clothing that is to be provided for people to wear when on the lineside or on or near the line.
There is an amendment / clarification associated with this document, for details please refer to the 'More Info' on rgsonline or the 'Amendments and Clarifications to Current Documents' section of the RGS Catalogue.

GORT3350 Iss 5 December 2011 (A)
Communication of Urgent Operating Advice
This document defines the requirements for reporting and disseminating urgent operating safety information arising from operating incidents, equipment defects and misunderstanding of operating rules, regulations or instructions.
GORT3350 issue five replaces issue four (small scale change). The amendment is limited to the addition of non-mandatory Appendix A to provide guidance on section 2.2.1 of the standard.

GORT3407 Iss 2 December 2009 (A)
Train Operation - Exceptional Load Documentation
This document mandates requirements for the production of information for the carriage of exceptional loads by freight train.

GORT3413 Iss 1 August 2008 (A)
Provision of Information and Signs for Access on the Railway
This document sets out requirements for provision of information about access to and alongside the railway. It specifies where operational safety signs for personnel on or near the lineside are required.

GORT3421 Iss 3 December 2009 (A)
Dangerous Goods - Rail Conditions of Acceptance
This document mandates additional requirements for the carriage of dangerous goods by rail in Great Britain.

SUPERSEDED
GORT3436 Iss 2 December 2009 (A)
Information for Safe Train Operation
This document mandates requirements for information to be provided by the railway undertaking to the infrastructure manager regarding train running on Network Rail managed infrastructure. It also mandates requirements for the labelling of defective vehicles.
Superseded by GORT3436 Iss 3. Document ceases to be in force from June 2013.

NEW
GORT3436 Iss 3 March 2013 (A)
Information for Safe Train Operation
GORT3436 Information for Safe Train Operation mandates requirements for information to be provided by the railway undertaking to the infrastructure manager regarding train running on Network Rail managed infrastructure. It also mandates requirements for the labelling of defective vehicles.
Supersedes GORT3436 Iss 2. Document comes into force June 2013.

GORT3437 Iss 6 June 2010 (A)
Defective On-Train Equipment
This document mandates the requirements relating to the production of contingency plans, which have to be applied when on-train equipment becomes defective. It applies to all trains being brought into service, and to those in service, on Network Rail managed infrastructure.
This document contains requirements that are amended under the Railway Group Standards Code (Issue Three) as a small scale change. Reference to the amended requirement is made in the 'Issue Record'. All other parts of the document are unchanged from the previous issue.

GORT3440 Iss 2 October 2009 (A)
Steam Locomotive Operation
This document mandates risk control measures to manage the operation of steam locomotives on Network Rail managed infrastructure.

GORT3451 Iss 3 December 2011 (A)
Train Movement - Staff Suitability and Fitness Requirements
GORT3451 issue three replaces issue two (small scale change). The amendments are to clarify who is covered by the requirement in sections 2.1 and 2.3, to change 'general medical examinations' to 'medical examinations' in section 2.1, to change title of 2.1.2 from 'general medical examinations' to 'general health' and to update the definitions and references.

GORT3600 Iss 2 October 2009 (A)
Requirements for Operational Security Response Planning
This document mandates requirements for the production and co-ordination of procedures for the management of operational security.

FORMS AND CERTIFICATES

Mandated by the Rule Book
Below are details of the forms and certificates mandated by the Rule Book and other operating publications. The document requiring the use of these forms will indicate the current version. Prices for the forms & certificates are available from Willsons Printers unless specified, telephone: 01636 702334. Forms can be found on RGSonline. All the 'forms' from the Personalised Rule Book series (GORT3000) have been re-issued in the same 'stand alone' format following their amalgamation into the Modular Rule Book (GERT8000). The only alterations being that any references on the forms have been amended to refer to the Modular Rule Book sections. There is no change to the technical content or the layout of the forms.

SUPERSEDED
Form GORT3119-A Iss 5 December 2010
SPAD Data Collection Form (Infrastructure Manager)
The revised form is a consequence of proposal 09/022 from ATOC, against GORT3119 and GOGN3519 Accident and Incident Investigation (proposal was to revise SPAD categorisation and subsequent industry process for re-categorisation following investigation). The amendments that have been made to GORT3119 and GOGN3519 issue one do not change any procedural aspect of a SPAD specific accident or incident investigation, just the detail contained within it. As a consequence of these changes, RSSB has taken the opportunity to amend and update the SPAD Data Collection Forms (GORT3119-A and GORT3119-B). A Word version of this file is available on the SPAD page of RSSB's website: http://www.rssb.co.uk/SPR/Pages/signals_passed_at_danger.aspx. Users should note that both the PDF and MS Word versions are identical in content.
Further details of the key changes can be found on the briefing note see link: http://www.rgsonline.co.uk/Briefing_Notes/10%20BN35.pdf.
Superseded by Form GORT3119-A Iss 6.
Document ceases to be in force from March 2013.

NEW
Form GORT3119-A Iss 6 December 2012
Provisional SPAD Data Collection Form GORT3119-A (Infrastructure Manager)
Infrastructure managers and railway undertakings shall use the GORT3119 designated Provisional SPAD Data Collection forms when investigating signals passed at danger incidents. The GORT3119 A or C forms are for infrastructure managers, and the GORT3119 B or D forms are for railway undertakings. A Word version of this file is available on the SPAD page of RSSB's website: http://www.rssb.co.uk/SPR/Pages/signals_passed_at_danger.aspx. Users should note that both the PDF and MS Word versions are identical in content. Further details of the key changes can be found on the briefing note see link: http://www.rgsonline.co.uk/Briefing_Notes/12%20BN23.pdf
Supersedes Form GORT3119-A Iss 5.
Document comes into force March 2013.

SUPERSEDED
Form GORT3119-B Iss 5 December 2010
SPAD Data Collection Form (Railway Undertakings)
The revised form is a consequence of proposal 09/022 from ATOC, against GORT3119 and GOGN3519 Accident and Incident Investigation (proposal was to revise SPAD categorisation and subsequent industry process for re-categorisation following investigation). The amendments that have been made to GORT3119 and GOGN3519 issue one do not change any procedural aspect of a SPAD specific accident or incident investigation, just the detail contained within it. As a consequence of these changes, RSSB has taken the opportunity to amend and update the SPAD Data Collection Forms (GORT3119-A and GORT3119-B). A Word version of this file is available on the SPAD page of RSSB's website: http://www.rssb.co.uk/SPR/Pages/signals_passed_at_danger.aspx. Users should note that both the PDF and MS Word versions are identical in content.
Further details of the key changes can be found on the briefing note see link: http://www.rgsonline.co.uk/Briefing_Notes/10%20BN35.pdf.
Superseded by Form GORT3119-B Iss 6.
Document ceases to be in force from March 2013.

NEW
Form GORT3119-B Iss 6 December 2012
Provisional SPAD Data Collection Form GORT3119-B (Railway Undertaking)
Infrastructure managers and railway undertakings shall use the GORT3119 designated Provisional SPAD Data Collection forms when investigating signals passed at danger incidents. The GORT3119 A or C forms are for infrastructure managers, and the GORT3119 B or D forms are for railway undertakings. A Word version of this file is available on the SPAD page of RSSB's website: http://www.rssb.co.uk/SPR/Pages/signals_passed_at_danger.aspx. Users should note that both the PDF and MS Word versions are identical in content. Further details of the key changes can be found on the briefing note see link: http://www.rgsonline.co.uk/Briefing_Notes/12%20BN23.pdf
Supersedes Form GORT3119-B Iss 5.
Document comes into force March 2013.

NEW
Form GORT3119-C Iss 1 December 2012
Provisional ERTMS SPAD Data Collection Form GORT3119-C (Infrastructure Manager)
Infrastructure managers and railway undertakings shall use the GORT3119 designated Provisional SPAD Data Collection forms when investigating signals passed at danger incidents. The GORT3119 A or C forms are for infrastructure managers, and the GORT3119 B or D forms are for railway undertakings. A Word version of this file is available on the SPAD page of RSSB's website: http://www.rssb.co.uk/SPR/Pages/signals_passed_at_danger.aspx. Users should note that both the PDF and MS Word versions are identical in content. Further details of the key changes can be found on the briefing note see link: http://www.rgsonline.co.uk/Briefing_Notes/12%20BN23.pdf
Document comes into force March 2013.

NEW
Form GORT3119-D Iss 1 December 2012
Provisional ERTMS SPAD Data Collection Form GORT3119-D (Railway Undertaking)
Infrastructure managers and railway undertakings shall use the GORT3119 designated Provisional SPAD Data Collection forms when investigating signals passed at danger incidents. The GORT3119 A or C forms are for infrastructure managers, and the GORT3119 B or D forms are for railway undertakings. A Word version of this file is available on the SPAD page of RSSB's website: http://www.rssb.co.uk/SPR/Pages/signals_passed_at_danger.aspx. Users should note that both the PDF and MS Word versions are identical in content. Further details of the key changes can be found on the briefing note see link: http://www.rgsonline.co.uk/Briefing_Notes/12%20BN23.pdf
Document comes into force March 2013.

Form GORT3350-1 Iss 3 April 2007
Urgent Operating Advice Report Form
This form is a Network Rail maintained document and is provided as a stand-alone version of the form in GORT3350 issue two.

Form RT3112 12-03 December 2003
Blocking of Lines for Electric Traction Purposes - AE Form
This form is used by an Electrical Control Operator (ECO) to record details of an isolation of the AC overhead lines. An example of this form is found in Rule Book module AC2.

Form RT3113 12-03 December 2003
Blocking of Lines for Electric Traction Purposes - AT Form
This form is used to record details of an isolation of the AC overhead lines. An example of this form is found in Rule Book module AC2.

Form RT3114 12-03 December 2003
Blocking of Lines for Electric Traction Purpose - AS Form
This form is used to record details of an isolation of the AC overhead lines.

Form RT3116 06-07 June 2007
Overhead Line Permit
Form RT3116 has been updated in line with changes published in module AC2, AC electrified lines: Working on or near to the OLE.

Form RT3154 12-03 December 2003
Pilotman's Form for Working of Single Lines and Bi-Directional Lines by Pilotman
This form is used by the pilotman to record the details for the working of trains over single or bi-directional lines by pilotman, during a failure or when working to and from a point of obstruction. An example of this form is found in Rule Book module P2.

Form RT3155 12-03 December 2003
Signaller's Form for Working of Single and Bi-Directional Lines by Pilotman
This form is used by signallers to record the details for the working of trains over a single or bi-directional line by pilotman, during a failure or when working to and from a point of obstruction. An example of this form is found in Rule Book module P2.

Form RT3156 Iss 3 December 2009
Drivers Ticket for Working of Single and Bi-Directional Lines by Pilotman
This form is issued by the pilotman to drivers and records the details for the working of trains over a single or bi-directional line by pilotman, during a failure or when working to and from a point of obstruction.

Form RT3177 Iss 6 March 2012
Modified Working Arrangements Driver's Ticket
This form has been revised to come in line with the New Approach. This form is issued by the signaller to drivers and records the details for the working of trains, when authorised under special arrangements on single lines.

Form RT3180 Iss 06-12 March 2012
Signaller's Line Blockage Form
This form has been revised to come in line with the New Approach. This form is used by the signaller to record the details of a line blockage.

Form RT3181 Iss 06-12 March 2012
IWA/COSS/PC Line Blockage Form
This form has been revised to come in line with the New Approach. This form is used by the IWA/COSS/PC to record the details of a line blockage.

Form RT3183 12-03 December 2003
Agent's Point Setting Form
This form is used by a route setting agent to record the instructions received from a signaller when power operated points are to be operated manually.

Form RT3184 Iss 3 December 2009
Temporary Block Working Ticket
This form is used by a handsignaller to record the signaller's instructions for temporary block working.

Form RT3185 02-05 February 2005
Reporting a signal / AWS / TPWS / ATP / TVM failure or irregularity
This form is used by drivers and signallers to record details of a signalling failure or irregularity. An example of this form is found in Rule Book module S3.

Form RT3186 12-07 December 2007
Release of Signalling Controls Form
This form is issued by signallers and signalling technicians to record arrangements for the release of signalling controls. An example of this form is found in Rule Book module T1A.
This form has been updated as a result of rules changes to module T1A.

Form RT3187 06-07 June 2007
Signal Engineering Work
Form RT3187 has been updated in line with changes to module T1A that are published in module AM (see amendments AM4/11 and AM4/12).

Form RT3188 02-05 February 2005
Activation of TPWS other than a signal passed at danger (SPAD)
This form is used by a signaller to record information obtained from drivers after the activation of TPWS, except when a signal has been passed at danger.

Form RT3191 12-03 December 2003
Pilotman's Single Line Working Form
This form is used by a pilotman to record the arrangements for single line working.

Form RT3192 12-03 December 2003
Signaller's Single Line Working Form
This form is used by a signaller to record the arrangements for implementing single line working.

Form RT3193 Iss 3 December 2009
Driver's Single Line Working Ticket
This form is used by a pilotman to inform the driver of a train of the arrangements during single line working.

Form RT3198 06-11 June 2011
Possession Arrangements Form
This form is used by the PICOP to record the arrangements for a possession of a running line.

Form RT3199 12-12 September 2012
Engineering Supervisor's Certificate
This form is used by the Engineering Supervisor to record arrangements for setting up work sites within a possession of a running line.

Form RT3973-CON Iss 1 December 2009
Advice to Train Crews - Conveyance of Containers
This form is a Network Rail maintained document and is provided as a stand-alone version of the form originally reproduced as an Appendix to GORT3407 issue one. Form RT3973-NUC, Form RT3973-CON, Form RT3973-EXL and Form RT3973-HAW will no longer be reproduced as an appendix to GORT3407 issue two but will be published on the RGSonline website.

Form RT3973-EXL Iss 1 December 2009
Advice to Train Crews - Conveyance of Exceptional Loads
This form is a Network Rail maintained document and is provided as a stand-alone version of the form originally reproduced as an Appendix to GORT3407 issue one. Form RT3973-NUC, Form RT3973-CON, Form RT3973-EXL and Form RT3973-HAW will no longer be reproduced as an appendix to GORT3407 issue two but will be published on the RGSonline website.

Form RT3973-HAW Iss 1 December 2009
Advice to Train Crew - Conveyance of Heavy Axle Weight
This form is a Network Rail maintained document and is provided as a stand-alone version of the form originally reproduced as an Appendix to GORT3407 issue one. Form RT3973-NUC, Form RT3973-CON, Form RT3973-EXL and Form RT3973-HAW will no longer be reproduced as an appendix to GORT3407 issue two but will be published on the RGSonline website.

Form RT3973-NUC Iss 1 December 2009
Advice to Train Crews - Conveyance of Radioactive Flask
This form is a Network Rail maintained document and is provided as a stand-alone version of the form originally reproduced as an Appendix to GORT3407 issue one. Form RT3973-NUC, Form RT3973-CON, Form RT3973-EXL and Form RT3973-HAW will no longer be reproduced as an appendix to GORT3407 issue two but will be published on the RGSonline website.

CODES OF PRACTICE

GORC3537 Iss 5 September 2011 (A)
Recommendations for Defective On-Train Equipment
GORC3537 gives details of a recommended method which, if followed, would meet the requirements of Railway Group Standard GORT3437.
This document contains requirements that are amended under the Railway Group Standards Code (Issue Three) as a small scale change. Reference to the amended requirements is made in the 'Issue Record'. All other parts of the document are unchanged from the previous issue.
In order to assist RUs who wish to take advantage of issue five of GO/RC3537 and the changes to GE/RT8000/TW5 section 32 (Track Circuit Actuators), RSSB has produced a guidance document on the use of the Risk Advisor Tool which is obtained from RSSB and which must be used to establish the criteria to be documented in the DOTE for allowing stock to enter or continue in service.
http://www.rssb.co.uk/sitecollectiondocuments/pdf/reports/research/T579_guide_final.pdf.
http://spark.rssb.co.uk/Lists/Records/DispForm.aspx?ID=736.

GORC3561 Iss 4 December 2011 (A)
Recommendations for Train Movement - Staff Suitability and Fitness Requirements
GORC3561 issue four replaces issue three (small scale change). The amendments are limited to:
a) Addition of RC clauses to provide further clarification.
b) Transfer of appendices B, C, D, E, F, G and I to GOGN3655
c) Withdrawal of appendix H
d) Updating definitions and references sections.
e) Other minor wording improvements

RAIL INDUSTRY STANDARDS

RIS-3701-TOM Iss 1 June 2010 (A)
Rail Industry Standard for a Confidential Reporting System for Rail Staff
This document provides a voluntary standard for the basic requirements of a confidential reporting system appropriate for rail staff. It outlines areas in which infrastructure managers and railway undertakings might act to publicise the availability of a confidential reporting system to all their rail staff, resource investigation, and co-operate to respond to reports.
There is an amendment / clarification associated with this document, for details please refer to the 'More Info' on rgsonline or the 'Amendments and Clarifications to Current Documents' section of the RGS Catalogue.

RIS-3702-TOM Iss 1 September 2011 (A)
Rail Industry Standard for Management of Route Knowledge for Drivers, Train Managers, Guards and Driver Managers
RIS-3702-TOM provides a standard on the training, development, monitoring and assessment of staff on route knowledge and route risks, for the rail industry to use if they so choose. This document, where appropriate, also contains additional guidance that should be considered by railway undertakings during the development and management of their route learning and assessment processes.

SUPERSEDED
RIS-3703-TOM Iss 1 June 2011 (A)
Rail Industry Standard for Passenger Train Dispatch and Platform Safety Measures
RIS-3703-TOM is a new voluntary standard for the development of passenger train dispatch processes and additional measures to encourage and manage the safe behaviour of passengers and the public platforms. It sets out the operational requirements and is for application by infrastructure managers responsible for stations, who will need to work in conjunction with railway undertakings when developing their dispatch plan processes. In the context of this document, this means those who are responsible for the specification, development and / or implementation of train dispatch processes and safety measures on station platforms.
Superseded by RIS-3703-TOM Iss 2.
Document ceases to be in force from March 2013.

NEW
RIS-3703-TOM Iss 2 March 2013 (A)
Rail Industry Standard for Passenger Train Dispatch and Platform Safety Measures
RIS-3703-TOM is for application by infrastructure managers responsible for stations, who will need to work in conjunction with railway undertakings when developing their dispatch plan process. In the context of this document, this means those who are responsible for the specification, development and / or implementation of train dispatch processes and safety measures on station platforms. In the context of this document, a railway undertaking responsible for the train dispatch arrangements at a station will be considered to be the infrastructure manager.
Supersedes RIS-3703-TOM Iss 2.
Document comes into force March 2013.

Uncontrolled When Printed

RIS-3751-TOM Iss 1 August 2008 (A)
Rail Industry Standard for Train Driver Selection
This document details requirements for selection of train drivers by railway undertakings and the transfer of safety information relevant to employment of train drivers, when they change employment between railway undertakings. This document, where appropriate, also contains additional guidance that should be considered by the railway undertaking during the development and management of its selection processes.

RIS-3776-TOM Iss 1 December 2009 (A)
Rail Industry Standard on the Use of Mobile Telephonic Equipment in Driving Cabs
This is a voluntary standard on the use of mobile telephonic equipment in driving cabs. It applies to drivers when in charge of a train and other personnel authorised to be present in a driving cab from which the train is being driven. Stakeholders are railway undertakings, infrastructure manager and trade unions.
This document does not supersede any other Railway Group Standard and it has been published at the request of railway undertakings to bring about a consistent approach to the use of mobile communication equipment in driving cabs.

GUIDANCE NOTES

GEGN8516 Iss 1 August 2008 (A)
Guidance on Recording and Monitoring of Spoken Safety Communications
This document sets out guidance for recording and monitoring of spoken safety communications between drivers, signallers and other safety critical staff.

GEGN8532 Iss 4 September 2012 (A)
Guidance on Railway Fog Signals (now known as 'Signals, railway Track, Explosive')
GEGN8532 gives guidance on railway fog signals. This guidance is intended to assist infrastructure managers and railway undertakings in understanding their responsibilities in relation to railway fog signals.

GEGN8540 Iss 1 February 2009 (A)
Guidance on Low Adhesion between the Wheel and the Rail - Managing the Risk
This document gives guidance on interpreting the requirements of GERT8040 Low Adhesion between the Wheel and the Rail - Managing the Risk.

SUPERSEDED
GEGN8570 Iss 1 December 2008 (A)
Guidance on the Management of Drugs and Alcohol
This document gives guidance on railway undertakings and infrastructure managers in managing the risks created by the abuse of drugs and alcohol. It is intended to help railway undertakings and infrastructure managers to meet the requirements of the Transport and Works Act 1992 and also GERT8070 Testing Railway Safety Critical Workers for Drugs and Alcohol.
Superseded by GEGN8570 Iss 2. Document ceases to be in force from March 2013.

NEW
GEGN8570 Iss 2 December 2012 (A)
Guidance on the Management of Drugs and Alcohol
GERT8070 mandates common requirements for drug and alcohol testing of staff carrying out safety critical work to be applied by the infrastructure manager and railway undertakings. This guidance document gives guidance on interpreting the requirements of GERT8070. It does not constitute a recommended method of meeting any set of mandatory requirements.
Supersedes GEGN8570 Iss 1. Document comes into force March 2013.

GOGN3518 Iss 1 October 2008 (A)
Guidance on Incident Response Planning & Management
This document gives guidance on interpreting the requirements of RGS GORT3118.

SUPERSEDED
GOGN3519 Iss 2 September 2010 (A)
Guidance on Accident and Incident Investigation
This guidance document has been published by Rail Safety and Standards Board to give guidance on interpreting the requirements of Railway Group Standard GORT3119. It does not constitute a recommended method of meeting any set of mandatory requirements.
Superseded by GOGN3519 Iss 3. Document ceases to be in force from March 2013.

NEW
GOGN3519 Iss 3 December 2012 (A)
Guidance on Accident and Incident Investigation
GORT3119 mandates requirements for the investigation of accidents and incidents involving more than one duty holder so that system improvements necessary to prevent or reduce the likelihood of recurrence, or mitigate the consequences, are identified and implemented. This guidance document has been published by RSSB to give guidance on interpreting the requirements of GORT3119. It does not constitute a recommended method of meeting any set of mandatory requirements.
Supersedes GOGN3519 Iss 2. Document comes into force March 2013.

SUPERSEDED
GOGN3653 Iss 1 April 2010 (A)
Guidance for Safe Freight Train Operation
GOGN3653 provides guidance to infrastructure managers and railway undertakings on the information to be exchanged regarding the loading, preparation and operation of freight vehicles and trains. It also provides guidance on the information that staff need to ensure they clearly understand matters relating to design, loading, preparation and operation of freight vehicles. It does not constitute a recommended method of meeting any mandatory requirements.
Superseded by GOGN3653 Iss 2. Document ceases to be in force from March 2013.

NEW
GOGN3653 Iss 2 March 2013 (A)
Guidance for Safe Freight Train Operation
This document gives guidance to Transport Undertakings on the information to be exchanged regarding the loading, preparation and operation of freight vehicles and trains. It also provides guidance on the information that staff need to ensure they clearly understand matters relating to design, loading, preparation and operation of freight vehicles.
Supersedes GOGN3653 Iss 1. Document comes into force March 2013.

GOGN3655 Iss 1 December 2011 (A)
Guidance on Medical Fitness for Railway Safety Critical Workers
GOGN3655 provides guidance for railway undertakings and infrastructure managers on medical fitness for railway safety critical workers and is intended to assist them in understanding their responsibilities in relation to medical fitness and how they may approach the setting of their own medical fitness criteria, where appropriate.
Appendices in GORC3561 issue three were transferred to GOGN3655, except Appendix A (Visual acuity of train drivers) and Appendix H (Railway workers and diabetes - guidance for medical assessors). The wording has not change in these appendices, except for the amendments to Appendix C (Hearing) as a result of research project T664 (Use of hearing aids by operational staff).

SUPERSEDED
GOGN3676 Iss 2 December 2009 (A)
Guidance on the Carriage of Dangerous Goods by Rail
This document gives guidance on the carriage of dangerous goods by rail.
Superseded by GOGN3676 Iss 3. Document ceases to be in force from March 2013.

NEW
GOGN3676 Iss 3 March 2013 (A)
Guidance on the Carriage of Dangerous Goods by Rail
This document gives guidance on the carriage of dangerous goods by rail. This guidance is intended to assist Transport Undertakings in understanding their responsibilities in relation to the carriage of dangerous goods by rail.
Supersedes GOGN3676 Iss 2. Document comes into force March 2013.

GOGN3677 Iss 1 December 2010 (A)
Guidance on Operational Criteria for the Provision of Lineside Telephony Following GSM-R Introduction
GOGN3677 is intended to assist infrastructure managers and railway undertakings in understanding operational safety responsibilities when deciding what lineside telephony should be provided under the strategy of cab mobile GSM-R fitment, particularly in relation to critical assets, and what potentially may be recovered. This guidance should be read as supporting the network change process. In conjunction with this guidance a risk assessment tool has been produced to assist duty holders in reaching costed appraisal of the safety and performance benefits and disbenefits of providing or removing lineside telephony. The CBA tool in support of this guidance note can be downloaded from the RSSB Rail Risk Portal at: www.safetyriskmodel.co.uk.

Uncontrolled When Printed

RSSB GOOD PRACTICE GUIDES

NEW
RS100 Iss 1 March 2013 (W)
Good practice Guide on Competence Development
RS100 is a good practice guide on competence development that incorporates outputs from recent and current RSSB research and development projects as well as other leading practice from within the industry and beyond. The document is aimed primarily at all duty holders (infrastructure managers and railway undertakings) who are required under The Railways and other Guided Transport Systems (Safety) Regulations 2006 (ROGS) to make provisions within their Safety Management System (SMS) to ensure, so far as is reasonably practicable, that the competence of all safety-critical staff under their control is developed and maintained to a minimum safe standard.
Supersedes RS220 Iss 2, RS221 Iss 1, RS501 Iss 2, RS701 Iss 2, RS702 Iss 1.
Document comes into force March 2013.

SUPERSEDED
RS220 Iss 2 June 2007 (B)
Good Practice in Training
A guide to the analysis, design, delivery and management of training.
Superseded by RS100 Iss 1. Document ceases to be in force from March 2013.

SUPERSEDED
RS221 Iss 1 August 2008 (A)
Good Practice Guide to Train Driver Training
This document provides a guide to the analysis, design, delivery and management of train driver training.
Superseded by RS100 Iss 1. Document ceases to be in force from March 2013.

RS232 Iss 1 August 2008 (A)
Good Practice Guide on Cognitive and Individual Risk Factors
The aim of this document is to raise awareness of the cognitive and individual factors that can influence the potential for driver error, the distinction between different categories of errors and violations, and to offer good practice guidance on the proactive management and mitigation of the human risks.

SUPERSEDED
RS501 Iss 2 June 2007 (B)
Good Practice Guide on Simulation as a Tool for Training and Assessment
This document provides guidelines and advice for the use of simulation techniques in training and assessment.
Superseded by RS100 Iss 1. Document ceases to be in force from March 2013.

RS504 Iss 1 September 2012 (B)
Fatigue Management - A Good Practice Guide
RS504 is primarily aimed at duty holders who have a legislative obligation to comply with 'Regulation 25 - Fatigue' contained within 'The Railways and Other guided Transport Systems (Safety) Regulations'. It complements guidance produced by the Office of Rail Regulation (ORR) that has been produced to assist duty holders to comply with ROGS. It provides a practical illustration of how fatigue risks can be systematically managed to improve the health and safety of the workforce and operations. It sets out key elements of effective fatigue management and illustrates how these can be incorporated into a company's overarching safety management arrangements.

RS516 Iss 1 April 2008 (A)
Cab Secure Radio (CSR) Handbook
This document is intended for signallers and drivers who use cab secure radio (CSR) and outline the generic instructions for using this equipment.

RS520 Iss 1 September 2010 (A)
GSM-R (IVRS) Radio system Handbook
You will need this GSM-R (IVRS) handbook if you use the IVRS radio system and carry out the duties of a signaller or driver.

RS522 Iss 1 March 2012 (A)
AWS and TPWS Handbook
RS522 is applicable to Infrastructure Manager(s) and Railway Undertaking(s) and has information relevant to signallers and drivers in relation to AWS and TPWS usage and functionality. The document may be used as a training aid or reference manual, in addition to existing formal training.

SUPERSEDED
RS701 Iss 2 August 2008 (A)
Good Practice Guide on Competence Review and Assessment
This document provides good practice in the areas of competence assessment and review to minimise risk to the UK railway.
Superseded by RS100 Iss 1. Document ceases to be in force from March 2013.

SUPERSEDED
RS702 Iss 1 August 2008 (A)
Good Practice Guide for Driver Assessment
This document offers practical advice designed to assist railway undertakings in the development of their competence management arrangements.
Superseded by RS100 Iss 1. Document ceases to be in force from March 2013.

Uncontrolled When Printed

MANUAL

SUPERSEDED
GORM3053 Iss 3 September 2011 (A)
Working Manual for Rail Staff, Handling and Carriage of Dangerous Goods - Glossary
Glossary for the Working Manual for Rail Staff, Handling and Carriage of Dangerous Goods.
Superseded by GORT3053 Iss 4. Document ceases to be in force from June 2013.

SUPERSEDED
GORM3056 Iss 2 December 2003 (W)
Working Manual for Rail Staff: Freight Train Operations
This manual contains documents relating to Freight Operations.
Superseded by GORT3056 Iss 3. Document ceases to be in force from June 2013.

OTHER

None

RAILWAY GROUP STANDARDS

GERT8016 Iss 1 June 2000 (A)
Verification of Electrification Systems and Interactions with Other Systems.
This document mandates the verification process for new or significant changes to electrification systems and interactions with other systems.

GERT8023 Iss 1 October 2000 (A)
Compatibility Between Electric Trains and Electrification Systems
Process for managing change that affects the compatibility between electric trains and electrification systems.

GERT8024 Iss 1 October 2000 (A)
Persons Working On or Near to AC Electrified Lines
This document defines the requirements for the production of safe systems of work to prevent injury from electrical causes to persons working on or so near to Railtrack's AC overhead line equipment that danger may arise.

GERT8025 Iss 1 October 2001 (A)
Electrical Protective Provisions for Electrified Lines
This document mandates the design requirements for the avoidance of direct contact between persons and live parts of electrification equipment and of electrical equipment on trains.
There is an amendment / clarification associated with this document, for details please refer to the 'More Info' on rgsonline or the 'Amendments and Clarifications to Current Documents' section of the RGS Catalogue.

GLRT1253 Iss 1 April 2000 (A)
Mitigation of DC Stray Current Effects
This document mandates the process requirements to control the risks to infrastructure arising from the import of DC stray currents.

GLRT1254 Iss 1 April 2000 (A)
Electrified Lines Traction Bonding
This document mandates the requirements for electrified lines traction bonding.

GLRT1255 Iss 1 February 2009 (A)
Low Voltage Power Supplies in Electrified Areas
This document mandates requirements for control of return and stray currents and the management of earthing for low voltage power supplies in electrified areas.

GMRT1041 Iss 1 August 1997 (A)
Warning Signs and Notices for Electrified Lines
This standard defines the requirements for the provision of warning signs relating to the risk of electric shock in areas with electrified lines.

RAIL INDUSTRY STANDARDS

RIS-1800-ENE Iss 1 September 2010 (A)
Rail Industry Standard for Network and Depot Interface Management - Isolation Documentation
This document sets out principles to be applied in the production and management of isolation documentation and local isolation instructions in relation to electrified railway depot facilities not a part of the Network and which adjoin or are electrically interfaced to Network infrastructure. The prime purpose of the document is to address the interface between the Network and these depot facilities.
There is an amendment / clarification associated with this document, for details please refer to the 'More Info' on rgsonline or the 'Amendments and Clarifications to Current Documents' section of the RGS Catalogue.

CODES OF PRACTICE

None

GUIDANCE NOTES

GEGN8600 Iss 1 March 2012 (B)
Guidance on the Conventional Rail Energy TSI
This document gives guidance on interpreting the technical requirements of the Conventional Rail Energy Technical Specification for Interoperability (CR ENE TSI) as they apply to the Great Britain mainline network and ensure that a consistent approach for implementation is achieved.

Uncontrolled When Printed

GEGN8623 Iss 1 April 2007 (A)
Guidance on the Change Process for Projects Affecting Compatibility Between Electric Trains and Electrification Systems
This document GEGN8623 gives guidance for the change process associated with projects that affect operation between electric trains and an electrification system. It specifically addresses the introduction of new or modified electric trains or changes to operations that affect power requirements on a route-by-route basis and to ascertain the compatibility of electric trains and an electrification system for both railway undertakings and infrastructure managers.

MANUAL

None

FORMS

None

OTHER

None

Uncontrolled When Printed

Index of Standards

Uncontrolled When Printed

Superseded or cancelled - ♦
Bold page number – Main Entry
New Issue or Standard - ■

BR1609■, 10
BR1654, 2
BR1661■, 10
Form GORT3119-A ■, 38
Form GORT3119-A ♦, 38
Form GORT3119-B ■, 39
Form GORT3119-B ♦, 38
Form GORT3119-C ■, 39
Form GORT3119-D ■, 39
Form GORT3350-1, 39
Form RT3112 12-03, 39
Form RT3113 12-03, 39
Form RT3114 12-03, 39
Form RT3116 06-07, 39
Form RT3154 12-03, 40
Form RT3155 12-03, 40
Form RT3156, 40
Form RT3177, 40
Form RT3180, 40
Form RT3181, 40
Form RT3183 12-03, 40
Form RT3184, 40
Form RT3185 02-05, 40
Form RT3186 12-07, 40
Form RT3187 06-07, 40
Form RT3188 02-05, 40
Form RT3191 12-03, 40
Form RT3192 12-03, 40
Form RT3193, 40
Form RT3198 06-11, 41
Form RT3199 12-12, 41
Form RT3973-CON, 41
Form RT3973-EXL, 41
Form RT3973-HAW, 41
Form RT3973-NUC, 41
Form RT8106, 9
Form RT8250, 20
GCRC5521, 23
GCRC5633, 23
GCRT5021, 22
GCRT5033, 22
GCRT5112, 22
GCRT5212, 22
GEGN8502, 17
GEGN8516, 42
GEGN8521 ♦, 6
GEGN8526, 6
GEGN8532, 43
GEGN8537, 6
GEGN8540, 43
GEGN8560, 6
GEGN8565, 17
GEGN8570 ■, 43
GEGN8570 ♦, 43
GEGN8571, 7
GEGN8573, 23
GEGN8577, 17
GEGN8578, 7
GEGN8579, 7
GEGN8580 ♦, 7
GEGN8582 ♦, 7
GEGN8600, 46
GEGN8602, 7
GEGN8603 ■, 7
GEGN8605, 8
GEGN8608, 8
GEGN8614, 17
GEGN8618, 8
GEGN8623, 47
GEGN8642, 8
GEGN8643, 8
GEGN8672, 8
GERC8517, 6
GERT8000-RBBL ■, 26
GERT8000-AC, 24
GERT8000-AM ■, 24
GERT8000-AM ♦, 24
GERT8000-AM ERTMS, 24
GERT8000-DC, 24
GERT8000-G1, 24
GERT8000-HB1, 24
GERT8000-HB10, 24
GERT8000-HB11, 24
GERT8000-HB12, 24
GERT8000-HB13, 24
GERT8000-HB14, 24
GERT8000-HB15, 24
GERT8000-HB16, 24
GERT8000-HB17, 25
GERT8000-HB18, 25
GERT8000-HB2, 25
GERT8000-HB3, 25
GERT8000-HB4, 25
GERT8000-HB5, 25
GERT8000-HB6, 25
GERT8000-HB7, 25
GERT8000-HB8, 25
GERT8000-HB9, 25
GERT8000-Index ■, 25
GERT8000-Index ♦, 25
GERT8000-Issue ■, 26
GERT8000-Issue ♦, 25
GERT8000-Issue HB, 25
GERT8000-M1, 26
GERT8000-M2, 26
GERT8000-M3, 26
GERT8000-OTM, 26
GERT8000-P1, 26
GERT8000-P2, 26
GERT8000-P2 ERTMS, 26
GERT8000-PoSA, 26
GERT8000-PPBL ♦, 26
GERT8000-RBBL ♦, 26
GERT8000-RBBL ERTMS, 26
GERT8000-S1, 26
GERT8000-S2, 26
GERT8000-S3, 27
GERT8000-S4, 27
GERT8000-S4 ERTMS, 27
GERT8000-S5, 27
GERT8000-S5 ERTMS, 27
GERT8000-S6 ERTMS, 27
GERT8000-SP, 27
GERT8000-SP ERTMS, 27
GERT8000-SS1 ■, 28
GERT8000-SS1 ♦, 27
GERT8000-SS2 ■, 28
GERT8000-SS2 ♦, 28
GERT8000-T10, 28
GERT8000-T11 ERTMS, 28
GERT8000-T1A, 28
GERT8000-T1B, 28
GERT8000-T2 ERTMS, 28
GERT8000-T3, 28
GERT8000-T3 ERTMS, 28
GERT8000-TS1, 29
GERT8000-TS10 ERTMS, 29
GERT8000-TS2, 29
GERT8000-TS3, 29
GERT8000-TS4, 29
GERT8000-TS5, 29
GERT8000-TS7, 29
GERT8000-TS8, 29
GERT8000-TS9, 29
GERT8000-TW1, 29
GERT8000-TW2, 29
GERT8000-TW3, 29
GERT8000-TW5, 30
GERT8000-TW6, 30
GERT8000-TW7, 30
GERT8000-TW8, 30
GERT8000-TW8 ERTMS, 30
GERT8001 ■, 30
GERT8001 ♦, 30
GERT8006, 22
GERT8012, 2
GERT8014, 12
GERT8015, 2
GERT8016, 46
GERT8018, 2
GERT8019, 2
GERT8021 ♦, 2
GERT8023, 46
GERT8024, 46
GERT8025, 46

Uncontrolled When Printed

GERT8026, 2
GERT8030, 2
GERT8034, 2
GERT8035, 2
GERT8037, 3
GERT8040, 30
GERT8046, 30
GERT8047, 30
GERT8048, 3
GERT8054, 30
GERT8060, 3
GERT8064, 3
GERT8070 ■, 31
GERT8070 ♦, 31
GERT8071, 3
GERT8072, 3
GERT8073, 22
GERT8080 ♦, 3
GERT8081 ♦, 3
GERT8082 ♦, 3
GERT8106, 3
GERT8217, 31
GERT8250, 12
GERT8270, 12
GERT8402, 3
GERT8403 ■, 4
GERT8408, 4
GIGN7520, 23
GIGN7606, 8
GIGN7616, 23
GIRT7006, 4
GIRT7016, 22
GIRT7019, 22
GIRT7033, 4
GKGN0554, 8
GKGN0602, 8
GKGN0609, 8
GKGN0612, 8
GKGN0622, 8
GKGN0628, 8
GKGN0636, 9
GKGN0645 ■, 9
GKGN0645 ♦, 9
GKGN0653, 9
GKGN0675, 9
GKGN0692 ■, 9
GKGN0692 ♦, 9
GKGN0694 ■, 9
GKGN0802, 9
GKRT0009, 4
GKRT0028, 4
GKRT0036, 4
GKRT0039, 4
GKRT0041, 4
GKRT0042, 4
GKRT0044, 4
GKRT0045 ■, 4
GKRT0045 ♦, 4
GKRT0051, 4
GKRT0053, 5
GKRT0054, 5
GKRT0060, 5
GKRT0061, 5
GKRT0063, 5
GKRT0064, 5
GKRT0075, 5
GKRT0094 ■, 5
GKRT0186 ♦, 5
GKRT0192 ■, 5
GKRT0192 ♦, 5
GKRT0212, 5
GLRT1253, 46
GLRT1254, 46
GLRT1255, 46
GMGN2169, 18
GMGN2460, 18
GMGN2497, 18
GMGN2498, 18
GMGN2571, 18
GMGN2572, 18
GMGN2575, 11
GMGN2576, 11
GMGN2606, 18
GMGN2607, 18
GMGN2615, 18
GMGN2642, 19
GMGN2643, 19
GMGN2646, 19
GMGN2650, 19
GMGN2685, 19
GMGN2686, 19
GMGN2687, 19
GMGN2688, 19
GMGN2689, 19
GMGN2695, 20
GMRC2494, 16
GMRC2495, 16
GMRC2496, 16
GMRC2510, 16
GMRC2513, 16
GMRC2514, 16
GMRC2515, 16
GMRC2530, 16
GMRC2531, 17
GMRC2532, 17
GMRC2533, 17
GMRC2534, 17
GMRC2542, 17
GMRC2559, 17
GMRC2641, 17
GMRT1041, 46
GMRT2000, 12
GMRT2001, 12
GMRT2003, 12
GMRT2004, 12
GMRT2040, 12
GMRT2041, 12
GMRT2042, 12
GMRT2043, 12
GMRT2044, 13
GMRT2045, 13
GMRT2046, 13
GMRT2100, 13
GMRT2130, 13
GMRT2132, 13
GMRT2141, 13
GMRT2142, 13
GMRT2149, 13
GMRT2160, 13
GMRT2161, 14
GMRT2162, 14
GMRT2176, 14
GMRT2181, 14
GMRT2185, 14
GMRT2190, 14
GMRT2273, 14
GMRT2304, 14
GMRT2307, 11
GMRT2400, 11
GMRT2450, 14
GMRT2452, 14
GMRT2453, 14
GMRT2461, 14
GMRT2466, 15
GMRT2472, 15
GMRT2473, 15
GMRT2476, 11
GMRT2477, 15
GMRT2483, 15
GMRT2484, 15
GMRT2491, 15
GMTT0088, 15
GOGN3518, 43
GOGN3519 ■, 43
GOGN3519 ♦, 43
GOGN3653 ■, 44
GOGN3653 ♦, 43
GOGN3655, 44
GOGN3676 ■, 44
GOGN3676 ♦, 44
GOGN3677, 44
GOOTS303, 15
GORC3537, 41
GORC3561, 41
GORM3053 ♦, 45
GORM3056 ♦, 45
GORT3053 ■, 31
GORT3053-1 ■, 31
GORT3053-2 ■, 31
GORT3053-A ■, 32
GORT3053-A ♦, 31
GORT3053-App 1 ♦, 32
GORT3053-App 2 ♦, 32
GORT3053-B ■, 32
GORT3053-B ♦, 32
GORT3053-C ■, 32
GORT3053-C ♦, 32
GORT3053-D, 32
GORT3053-E, 32
GORT3053-F ■, 33

Uncontrolled When Printed

GORT3053-F ♦, 33
GORT3053-G, 33
GORT3053-PPBL ■, 33
GORT3056 ■, 33
GORT3056-1 ■, 33
GORT3056-2 ■, 33
GORT3056-3 ■, 34
GORT3056-A ♦, 34
GORT3056-App A ♦, 34
GORT3056-App B ♦, 34
GORT3056-B ■, 34
GORT3056-B ♦, 34
GORT3056-C ■, 34
GORT3056-C ♦, 34
GORT3056-D ■, 35
GORT3056-D ♦, 34
GORT3056-E ■, 35
GORT3056-E ♦, 35
GORT3056-F ♦, 35
GORT3056-G ♦, 35
GORT3056-H ♦, 35
GORT3056-J ■, 35
GORT3056-J ♦, 35
GORT3056-K ■, 36
GORT3056-K ♦, 35
GORT3118, 36
GORT3119 ■, 36
GORT3119 ♦, 36
GORT3208, 36
GORT3215, 36
GORT3279, 36
GORT3350, 37
GORT3407, 37
GORT3413, 37
GORT3421, 37
GORT3436 ■, 37
GORT3436 ♦, 37
GORT3437, 37
GORT3440, 37
GORT3451, 37
GORT3600, 37
PS305-4, 20
RIS-0340-CCS, 6
RIS-0794-CCS ■, 6
RIS-1530-PLT, 11
RIS-1700-PLT, 11
RIS-1701-PLT, 11
RIS-1800-ENE, 46
RIS-2701-RST, 15
RIS-2702-RST, 15
RIS-2705-RST, 15
RIS-2706-RST ■, 16
RIS-2773-RST ■, 16
RIS-3082-CCS ♦, 6
RIS-3701-TOM, 42
RIS-3702-TOM, 42
RIS-3703-TOM ■, 42
RIS-3703-TOM ♦, 42
RIS-3751-TOM, 42
RIS-3776-TOM, 42
RIS-7700-INS, 23
RIS-7701-INS, 23
RS100 ■, 44
RS220 ♦, 44
RS221 ♦, 44
RS232, 45
RS501 ♦, 45
RS504, 45
RS516, 45
RS520, 45
RS522, 45
RS701 ♦, 45
RS702 ♦, 45
TDGEN096, 6
TDRAD054 ♦, 6

Uncontrolled When Printed

Related Documents

RELATED DOCUMENTS

RGS Code and Relevant Strategies

NS-GSM-R-CELL-9501 Iss 1 December 2007 (A)
GSM-R Radio - Guidance on GSM-R Cell Planning Consultation
This document outlines the proposed consultation process for GSM-R cell planning and Group call areas. It also proposes a suite of cell design proposals and provides guidance on GSM-R network cell configuration issues that should be considered when undertaking the consultation.

SUPERSEDED
RGSC01 Iss 3 June 2008 (A)
Railway Group Standards Code
This document fulfils the requirements of the RSSB Constitution Agreement for a Code governing activities by RSSB and the duty holders who are members of RSSB in relation to Railway Group Standards (RGSs). It defines the procedures by which RSSB and the members of RSSB co-operate to create, revise or withdraw RGSs and manage deviations from them, to monitor the effectiveness of RGSs, and the role of RSSB in authorising RGSs.
The Code is supported by a Standards Manual which defines those elements of the cross industry management of RGSs and associated documents which are not subject to formal ORR approval. As a result both the Railway Group Standards Code and the Standards Manual need to be read together in order to obtain a complete understanding of the role of members of RSSB in relation to managing changes to RGSs and deviations from them.
Superseded by RGSC01 Iss 4. Document ceases to be in force from June 2013.

NEW
RGSC01 Iss 4 March 2013 (A)
Railway Group Standards Code
The Railway Group Standards Code (the Code) fulfils the requirements of the RSSB Constitution Agreement for a Code governing activities by RSSB and the members of RSSB in relation to Railway Group Standards (RGSs). It defines the governance arrangements for creating, changing, deviating from, and publishing RGSs.
The Code is supplemented by a Standards Manual (the Manual) which defines those elements of the cross industry management of RGSs which are not subject to formal Office of Rail Regulation (ORR) approval. As a result both of the Code and the Manual need to be read in conjuction in order to obtain a complete understanding of the role of members of RSSB in relation to managing RGSs and deviations from them. Each section of the Code is therefore reproduced in the relevant part of the Manual, distinguished by a grey background.
Supersedes RGSC01 Iss 3. Document comes into force June 2013.

SUPERSEDED
RGSC02 Iss 2 October 2009 (B)
Standards Manual
The purpose of the Railway Group Standards Code is to define the procedures by which RSSB and the members of RSSB co-operate to create, revise or withdraw Railway Group Standards (RGSs), to manage deviations from them, and to monitor the effectiveness of RGSs; and to define the role of RSSB in authorising RGSs. The Railway Group Standards Code is approved by the Office of Rail Regulation (ORR).
The Standards Manual supplements the Railway Group Standards Code by defining those elements of the cross-industry management of RGSs and associated documents which are not subject to formal ORR approval. In addition, the Standards Manual includes guidance relating to the management of RGSs and defines procedures for RSSB's involvement with standards other than RGSs.
There is an amendment / clarification associated with this document, for details please refer to the 'More Info' on rgsonline or the 'Amendments and Clarifications to Current Documents' section of the RGS Catalogue.
Superseded by RGSC02 Iss 3. Document ceases to be in force from June 2013.

NEW
RGSC02 Iss 3 March 2013 (B)
Standards Manual
The purpose of the Railway Group Standards Code (the Code) is to define the governance arrangements for creating, changing, deviating from, and publishing Railway Group Standards (RGSs). The Code is approved by the Office of Rail Regulation (ORR).
The Standards Manual (the Manual) supplements the Code by defining those elements of the cross-industry management of RGSs which are not subject to formal ORR approval. The Manual includes guidance relating to the management of RGSs and defines procedures for other documents authorised by RSSB, such as Rail Industry Standards (RISs), and Rail Industry Guidance Notes (GNs).
In addition, the Manual defines the processes by which the requirements of the Code are delivered, the roles and responsibilities of RSSB and others within those processes, how the processes for the production and maintenance of RGSs apply to documents authorised by RSSB and the processes for agreeing RSSB support in the production of other industry documents.
The Manual is not a stand-alone document and needs to be read in conjunction with the Code. Each section of the Code is therefore reproduced in the relevant part of the Manual, distinguished by a grey background.
Supersedes RGSC02 Iss 2. Document comes into force June 2013.

RSSB-GBMR-OC Iss 1 February 2012 (A)
Operational Concept for the GB Mainline Railway
This document provides the link between Fundamental Operating Principles and RGSs containing requirements for duty holders, national operating rules and procedures for duty holders' employees, and processes required by duty holders within their SMS.

RSSB-GSMR-OC Iss 1 December 2006 (B)
UK Application of GSM-R, The Operational Concept
This document has been produced by the RSSB as part of the rail industry's implementation of GSM-R radio communications to the British railway system. It describes the conceptual operation of the GSM-R voice (and some non ERTMS data functionality) radio communication system in terms of application of how the system is envisaged as operating from the point of view of the direct users of GSM-R, for example, drivers and signallers.

ATOC DOCUMENTS

To complement Railway Group Standards, ATOC issues a number of documents (Approved Codes of Practice, Guidance Notes and Good Practice Guides*) for the benefit of its members. These cover both operations and engineering related subjects and typically address areas where the subject matter falls outside the criteria for inclusion within a Group Standard. Many of these documents have been included by Rail Safety & Standards Board (RSSB) as indicated below.

* ACOPs and Guidance Notes are version controlled and subject to periodic review. Good Practice Guides are generally intended as one off documents.

OPERATIONS RELATED DOCUMENTS

All ACOPs, Guidance Notes and Good Practice Guides issued on behalf of the ATOC Operations Council or one of its sub-groups are included (other than any that relate only to internal ATOC reporting requirements).

ENGINEERING RELATED DOCUMENTS

ATOC Standards for Vehicle Interiors:
These documents were originally created when RSSB's predecessor (Railway Safety) was not permitted to include Vehicle Interiors in Railway Group Standards, so they were produced by Railway Safety under a memorandum of understanding with ATOC. The AV/STs are still the best statement of ATOC members' requirements and they are already Notified National Standards under the High Speed Interoperability TSIs. RSSB will consider and develop appropriate means of developing and integrating these documents as part of the implementation of the industry supported Strategy for Standards Management published by RSSB in November 2004.

In issuing these documents, neither ATOC nor RSSB makes any warranty, express or implied, that compliance with all or any documents published by RSSB on behalf of ATOC is sufficient on its own to ensure safe systems of work or operation. Each user is reminded not only of their own responsibilities to ensure health and safety at work, but also individual duties under health and safety legislation.

ATOC TRAIN DRIVING DOCUMENT

ATOCACOP006 Iss 3 October 2009 (A)
Approved Code of Practice Train Driving - Audit of Selection Processes
This Approved Code of Practice (ACOP) details the recommended arrangements for the audit of suppliers of selection processes for train driving on Network Rail infrastructure in circumstances where Rail Industry Standard for Train Driver Selection RIS-3751-TOM applies.

ATOCACOP016 Iss 1 June 2011 (A)
Approved Code of Practice - Incident Response Duties of Primary Support Operators
This Approved Code of Practice sets out the principles by which Train Operating Companies should respond to incidents affecting the railway infrastructure on routes for which they have been identified as Primary Support Operator, including those that may involve trains owned or leased by another Operator.

ATOCACOPEC01003 Iss 1B August 2005 (A)
Approved Code of Practice - Supplier Accreditation Scheme
Provides a means by which the industry can consistently meet the relevant obligations under applicable legislation and Rail Group Standards on the procurement of safety related materials and services. It applies to members of the ATOC/EC and their members.

ATOCACOPEC01006 Iss 2 November 2010 (A)
Approved Code of Practice - Inter-Company Rail Vehicle Engineering Change Process
Applies to all engineering change considered for rail vehicles or components, setting out process steps from inception through to completion providing guidance on the deployment of the processes defined in legislation, standards and other guidance notes.

ATOCACOPEC01007 Iss 1 September 2004 (A)
Approved Code of Practice - The Elements of Management of Safety Critical Components on Trains
Management of safety critical components within a new, old or modified sub system. Key features of PADS, duties and responsibilities of holders of the 'Know-why' where engineering change of design to safety critical components may be necessary.

ATOCACOPEC01009 Iss 2 November 2010 (A)
Approved Code of Practice - Approvals Process for GSM-R Cab Mobile Fitment
To facilitate the approvals process for first of class and fleet fitment of GSM-R cab mobile radios by Train Operating Companies.

ATOC VEHICLE INTERIORS

None

ATOC GUIDANCE NOTES

ATOCGN001 Iss 4 August 2012 (A)
Use of Data Recorders
This Guidance Note provides information on the use of Data Recorders.

ATOCGN003 Iss 5 February 2012 (A)
Guidance Note - The Training of On Train Staff in On Train Emergency Procedures
This document provides guidance on the training of on train staff in on train emergency procedures.

ATOCGN006 Iss 2 February 2009 (W)
Review of Company Driver Standards and Depot Verification
This document provides details of a recommended process for reviewing the adequacy of Company Standards for the management of train drivers and the compliance checking of the standards at locations where these staff book on.

ATOCGN009 Iss 1 September 2006 (A)
ATOC Guidance Note - Investigation of Station Overruns and Failures to Call
This Guidance Note provides advice on the investigation of station overruns and failures to call along with a suggested template form for capturing of the relevant information. In so doing, it seeks to encourage consistency of investigation across the industry.

ATOCGN010 Iss 1 April 2012 (A)
ATOC Guidance Note - Managing the Risk to Passengers and Staff from the Use of Contracted Road Services
This Guidance Note provides advice on managing risks associated with the use of road transport (i.e. buses and taxis) provided by Third Parties for conveyance of passengers and staff. This includes both routine, regular use (such as rail-air links and conveyance of train crew) and use in conjunction with engineering works or service disruption.

ATOCGN012 Iss 1 October 2012 (A)
Planning For and Responding To National Fuel Shortages
This Guidance Note provides guidance for Railway Undertakings on contingency planning for and responding to major disruptions to the UK's fuel supply.

NEW
ATOCGN013 Iss 1 January 2013 (A)
ATOC Guidance Note - Control of Risk Posed by the Presence of Legionella Bacteria in On-train Non-potable Water Systems
Provides guidance for Railway Undertakings on assessing the risk posed by the presence of legionella bacteria in on-train non-potable water systems and identifying and applying associated control and mitigation measures.
Document came into force January 2013.

NEW
ATOCGN014 Iss 1 December 2012 (A)
ATOC Guidance Note - Major Incidents - Preparation of Aide-Memoires for Senior Managers
This document provides guidance for Railway Undertakings on the content and format of aide-memoires and similar intended as prompts for senior managers tasked with leading the response to major incidents affecting their TOCs, particularly during the initial response phase during which they will be under greatest pressure.
Document came into force December 2012.

NEW
ATOCGN015 Iss 1 December 2012 (A)
ATOC Guidance Note - Extreme Weather Arrangements including Failure or Non-Availability of On-Train Environment Control Systems
This document provides guidance for Railway Undertakings on how to minimise the impact of extreme weather conditions on passengers and staff including specific consideration of the implications of non-operational on-train environment control systems.
Supersedes ATOCGPG003 Iss 1, ATOCGPG004 Iss 2 and ATOCGPG017 Iss 1.
Document came into force December 2012

ATOCGN1011 Iss 2 March 2008 (A)
Checklist for Provision of Humanitarian Assistance following a Major Passenger Rail Incident
This document should be read in conjunction with ATOCACOP011. It provides a checklist of points and issues to be considered as part of the humanitarian assistance response to those directly involved in a major passenger rail incident / together with their friends / relatives). It does NOT seek to address the emergency response itself.

ATOC GOOD PRACTICE GUIDES

SUPERSEDED
ATOCGPG003 Iss 1 July 2004 (A)
ATOC Good Practice Guide - Hot Weather Arrangements
This Guide provides advice on arrangements designed to assist both passengers and staff cope with impact of hot weather both at stations and on board trains.
Superseded by ATOCGN015 Iss 1. Document ceases to be in force from December 2012.

SUPERSEDED
ATOCGPG004 Iss 2 October 2005 (A)
ATOC Good Practice Guide - Responding to the Failure or Non-Availability of On-Train Air-Conditioning
This Guide provides advice on responding to the failure or non-availability of on-train air-conditioning equipment according to whether or not the train itself is disabled.
Superseded by ATOCGN015 Iss 1. Document ceases to be in force from December 2012.

ATOCGPG005 Iss 1 September 2004 (A)
ATOC Good Practice Guide - Control Centres: Management of Training and Controller Competence
This Guide provides advice on how to ensure that the competence of those undertaking tasks within Control Centres is managed effectively.

ATOCGPG006 Iss 1 September 2004 (A)
ATOC Good Practice Guide - Control Centres: Business Process Manual
This Guide provides comprehensive advice on the structure, format and content of a Business Process Manual for use in a Train Operator Control Centre.

ATOCGPG007 Iss 1 February 2005 (A)
ATOC Train Operators Safety Group Good Practice Guide - Selection and Management of Contractors
This Guide provides advice on the selection and management of contractors and other outside parties undertaking work on company premises so as to properly control the risks arising from such work to customers, staff, members of the public and contractors.

ATOCGPG008 Iss 1 January 2006 (A)
Provision of Drinking Water for On-Train Use
This Guide provides advice on the management of drinking water supply, storage, use and chlorination at depot, station and on-train, to consistently maintain the quality of drinking water to be fit for human consumption.

RELATED DOCUMENTS

ATOCGPG009 Iss 2 August 2005 (A)
ATOC Good Practice Guide - Improving Train Service Delivery
This Guide recognises the importance of train service performance - reliability and punctuality - to both customers and industry stakeholders. It identifies key roles and responsibilities and provides advice on how to manage the business activities that contribute to train service planning and delivery in such a way as to ensure the highest possible levels of performance are achieved and maintained.

ATOCGPG010 Iss 2 January 2010 (A)
ATOC Operational Resilience & Security Forum - Competency Assessment of Station incident Officers (SIOs)
This Guide sets out recommended criteria for ensuring the competence of persons nominated to act as Station Incident Officer by Railway Undertakings in accordance with Railway Group Standard GORT3118. Rather than reflecting any major change approach, ATOCGPG010 has been updated to take into account changes to the relevant Railway Group Standards and revised in the light of experience of its use.

ATOCGPG011 Iss 2 January 2010 (A)
ATOC Operational Resilience & Security Forum Good Practice Guide - Competence of Train Operator Liaison Officers (TOLOs)
This Guide sets out recommended criteria for ensuring the competence of persons nominated to act as Train Operator Liaison Officers in accordance with Railway Group Standard GORT3118. Rather than reflecting any major change approach, ATOCGPG011 has been updated to take into account changes to the relevant Railway Group Standards and revised in the light of experience of its use.

ATOCGPG012 Iss 1 December 2005 (A)
Safe Use of Station Vehicles
This Guide provides advice on managing risks associated with the use of station vehicles with particular reference to training, maintenance of vehicles, and safe working arrangements at stations.

ATOCGPG013 Iss 1 December 2005 (A)
Access to the Driving Cabs of a Train Operator's Trains by the Staff of Another Train Operator for the Purposes of Route Learning or Route Refreshing
This Good Practice Guide sets out principles which, if adhered to, should ensure that a train operator provides fair and non-discriminatory access to its driving cabs for the purposes of route learning or route refreshing.

ATOCGPG014 Iss 1 October 2006 (A)
ATOC Train Operators Safety Group Good Practice Guide - De-icing Agents for On Station Use
This Guide provides advice on the selection of suitable de-icing agents for use on and about stations and station car parks, in particular with reference to the independent research undertaken on behalf of the TOC community during 2005.

ATOCGPG015 Iss 1 March 2007 (A)
ATOC Good Practice Guide - Control of Smoking
This Guide provides advice on meeting the requirements of the English and Welsh Smoke Free legislation effective from July and April 2007 respectively and adoption of a common Railway Undertaking approach to smoking more generally.

ATOCGPG016 Iss 1 June 2007 (A)
ATOC Good Practice Guide - Management of Sub-Standard Performance by Train Drivers
This Guide sets out factors to be considered when seeking to identify sub-standard performance on the part of train drivers and determine its cause(s), along with suggested components of development programmes aimed at addressing such performance.

SUPERSEDED
ATOCGPG017 Iss 1 July 2008 (A)
ATOC Good Practice Guide - Responding to Stranded Trains
This document provides guidance on how to respond to passengers and staff on board trains which become stranded and in particular those without functioning on train environment control systems where controlled evacuation may be appropriate. It includes suggested check lists for staff concerned.
Superseded by ATOCGN015 Iss 1. Document ceases to be in force from December 2012.

ATOCGPG018 Iss 2 April 2010 (A)
ATOC Good Practice Guide - Railway Undertaking Input to Railway Strategic Safety Pan
This document contains guidance about the information that ATOC Safety Forum Members should send to RSSB in connection with the production of the Railway Strategic Safety Plan.

ATOCGPG019 Iss 2 May 2011 (A)
ATOC - Winter Arrangements for Stations
This guide provides guidance and examples of good practice for keeping station areas free of snow and ice.

ATOCNR GPG SP01 Iss 2 February 2012 (A)
Good Practice Guide - Meeting the Needs of Passengers when Trains are Stranded
This document provides guidance on the planning for and implementing arrangements to meet the needs of passengers in the event of the train(s) in which they are travelling becoming stranded (for whatever reason), noting that these need to be agreed jointly between Network Rail and Train Operators.

M&EE DOCUMENTS

The M&EE Networking Group (M&EE NG) produces Codes of Practice and other documents as good practice for all members of the industry.
RSSB has agreed to publish the Codes of Practice on behalf of M&EE NG and in doing so, M&EE NG remains solely responsible for all the content contained therein. RSSB has not separately validated or approved the information, nor was it involved in its development or creation. Railway industry users should seek independent advice before adopting any practices set out therein.
By agreeing to publish the Codes of Practice RSSB does not make any representation or warranty, express or implied, or accept responsibility for the accuracy or completeness of the contents of the Codes of Practice and/or whether their content is “state of the art”. Furthermore RSSB shall have no liability whatsoever to any user for any loss or damage incurred in respect to any of the information contained in the Codes of Practice and in particular from any information which is incomplete or inaccurate.

M&EE CODES OF PRACTICE

AP0001 Iss 4 March 2012 (A)
Audit Protocol for Supply of Possession-only Rail Vehicles with and without Operators
This Audit Protocol provides a comprehensive list of questions for an auditor to ask, and detailed guidance of what is expected of an auditor whilst auditing a supplier of Possession-only Rail Vehicles.

AP0002 Iss 1 September 2012 (A)
Code of Practice for Audit Protocol for Supply of Machine / Crane Controllers
This Audit Protocol provides a comprehensive list of questions for an auditor to ask and detailed guidance of what is expected of an auditor whilst auditing providers of Machine Controllers and Crane Controllers and forms the basis for the minimum technical and operational audit requirements.

COP0001 Iss 6 January 2012 (A)
Code of Practice for Operator Competency Standards for On Track Plant
This Code of Practice details the minimum competencies required to operate On Track Plant in accordance with the Rule Book. These requirements are in addition to competencies required to operate the machine in a non-rail environment.

COP0002 Iss 7 July 2010 (A)
Code of Practice for Planning for the Use of OTP
This Code of Practice details the minimum requirements for the planning and use of Road Rail Vehicles (RRVs) and Rail Mounted Maintenance Machines (RMMMs) excluding lifting operations.

COP0005 Iss 4 May 2012 (A)
Code of Practice for Handling Serviceable Rail with RRV Excavator Cranes including Thimbling
This Code of Practice details the equipment and working practices for handling and thimbling of serviceable rail, using RRV excavator cranes, to minimise the risk to personnel and damage to the rail. These recommendations can also be used for handling scrap rail where the risk to personnel is the same as handling serviceable rail but the damage to the rail is not so critical.

COP0007 Iss 4 January 2011 (A)
Code of Practice for On and Off Tracking of Rail-Road Vehicles
This Code of Practice is intended to give guidance for the safe on and off tracking of rail-road vehicles to mitigate the possibility of derailing or overturning the machine, potentially causing injury or damage to the machine and / or infrastructure, whilst undertaking this process.

COP0008 Iss 5 May 2012 (A)
Code of Practice for Tandem Lifting with Two Excavator Cranes
This Code of Practice details the control measures to be applied when using two excavator cranes to lift a load simultaneously. It applies to the use of two excavator cranes which normally lift loads independently but which are required to occasionally lift a load in conjunction with another similar excavator crane using a process known as Tandem Lifting. This Code of Practice applies to both road and rail lifting operations.

RELATED DOCUMENTS

COP0010 Iss 3 September 2012 (A)
Code of Practice for Safety Critical Maintenance Elements of Small Plant and Equipment
This Code of Practice details the arrangement for, and safety critical work implications of, the maintenance of small plant and equipment. This has been derived from consultation by the M&EE Group and Rail Plant Association with the Health & Safety Executive.

COP0011 Iss 3 November 2011 (A)
Code of Practice for Planning and Executing Lifting Operations
This Code of Practice details good practice to ensure that all lifting operations are planned and carried out with the correct equipment under a safe system of work. It concerns all lifting operations involving lifting equipment such as rail cranes, twin jib cranes, road-rail excavator cranes, vehicle mounted knuckle boom cranes, vehicle mounted lifting arms / gantries, S&C panel lifting equipment, MEWPS and road mobile cranes where the operation will be in the area defined as 'on or near the line' (as defined in Rule Book module G2). It does not include contract lifts or where knuckle boom cranes are used to deliver or remove materials and equipment to site and where any point of the machine or load will not be 'on or near the line'.

COP0012 Iss 5 May 2012 (A)
Code of Practice for Safety Related Defect Reporting for OTP and Plant & Equipment
This Code of Practice details the systems to have in place so that all safety related defects are reported and that other reported defects are checked in accordance with GERT8250 issue two, which advises that the national reporting system should be used for plant and machinery.

COP0013 Iss 4 January 2012 (A)
Code of Practice for Maintenance, Operation and Testing of Track Jacks
This Code of Practice details the use, maintenance, thorough examinations and testing required for all types of track jacks used on the rail network.

COP0014 Iss 5 November 2011 (A)
Code of Practice for Trailers and Attachments with RRVs and RMMMs
This Code of Practice details the requirements / actions to be taken, and control measures to be put in place when rail trailers and / or attachments are rail mounted and working with RRVs and RMMs. It covers all rail trailers and attachments with more than two rail wheels, towed or propelled by RRVs and RMMMs.

COP0015 Iss 2 January 2009 (A)
Code of Practice for Load Lifting Points on Road Rail Excavator Cranes
This Code of Practice is intended to provide explanation and guidance to manufacturers, converters, owners and users of road rail excavator cranes being used for lifting operations on Network Rail managed infrastructure. It applies to design, testing and use of load lifting points, including the quick hitch jaws on road rail excavator cranes used on Network Rail managed infrastructure.

COP0016 Iss 3 January 2011 (A)
Code of Practice for RRV & RMMM Machine / Crane Controller Checklists
This Code of Practice details a recommended standard industry RRV and RMMM Machine and Crane Controller checklist. This checklist has been produced to ensure a common format and requirements recognisable to all Machine and Crane Controllers carrying out their duties on Network Rail managed Infrastructure.

COP0017 Iss 1 December 2009 (A)
Code of Practice for Loading of On-Track Plant
This M&EE Code of Practice gives guidance on the arrangements for loading and securing of typical loads associated with all on-track plant (OTP) whilst on rail.

COP0018 Iss 4 September 2011 (A)
Code of Practice for Rail Mounted Manually Propelled Equipment
This Code of Practice details use and some aspects of the design and maintenance of rail mounted manually propelled equipment to prevent run-aways. It concerns all rail mounted manually propelled equipment used on Network Rail infrastructure and includes tools and equipment with more than two rail wheels. The document includes a brake test procedure that can be used during initial design acceptance.

COP0019 Iss 3 July 2010 (A)
Code of Practice for Action to be Taken in the Event of an Accident or Incident Involving OTP
This Code of Practice details the actions to be taken, and by whom, following an accident or incident involving OTP. This Code of Practice deals with the engineering technical aspects of incident management, companies should also have in place plans for dealing with personnel issues. With regard to accidents and incidents companies should have clear guidelines for Alcohol & Drug testing, relieving of duty etc - these are not dealt with in this Code of Practice - this may immediately affect the responsibilities of the persons indicated in this document.

RELATED DOCUMENTS

COP0021 Iss 2 January 2011 (A)
Code of Practice for Safe use of Quick Hitches
This Code of Practice identifies the types of quick hitches as categorised by the HSE and details the safety issues and provides safe systems of work related to the use of quick hitches for the rail industry when used on on-track machines, on-track plant and construction plant, including lifting operations.

COP0023 Iss 1 March 2009 (A)
Code of Practice for Demountable MEWP and Lifting Equipment
This Code of Practice details the arrangement for inspecting MEWPs and lifting equipment in accordance with legislation when attaching to the base vehicle. These arrangements are intended to maintain the integrity of the LOLER Thorough Examination process.

COP0024 Iss 3 July 2011 (A)
Code of Practice for Use and Loading of MEWPs
This Code of Practice concerns rail mounted MEWPs and also road MEWPs used in the railway environment and details their use, particularly:
a) Processes for type and amount of loads (that is personnel and materials) that should safely be permitted in the work platform of a MEWP.
b) The use of work restraint anchor points.
c) Getting in and out of the work platform at height.

COP0025 Iss 1 November 2010 (A)
Code of Practice for Dynamic Brake Testing of RRVs
This Code of Practice details the testing of the dynamic braking system of RRVs during routine maintenance examination to be carried out by the owners of the RRVs. This Code of Practice does not include in-brake tests, operator pre-work checks or the overhaul of the braking system. It does not replace existing brake testing for parking brakes or other static tests that could be specified for specific RRVs. It does not include inter-vehicle service brake and parking brake continuity testing.

COP0026 Iss 1 September 2012 (A)
Code of Practice for Flailing Operations Using OTP
This Code of Practice details the actions to be taken, when planning for and undertaking flailing operations. This Code of Practice applies to all personnel responsible for the planning and operation of all types of flail equipment using OTP but it is not intended to cover the application of circular saws mounted on powered arms for clearance or removal of vegetation.

COP0027 Iss 1 July 2012 (A)
Code of Practice for OTP Recovery
This Code of Practice details the processes necessary to recover OTP that has failed from the railway line. It includes an assessment to be made before the process is undertaken, and guidance on equipment and processes that could be necessary.

COP0100 Iss 6 May 2011 (A)
Code of Practice for Management of Operational Risk and SPAD Avoidance Strategy for On-track Machines (OTM)
This Code of Practice provides an operational risk strategy which sets out the focal points for Directors, Managers and all other front line operations staff. It also describes a raft of measures that can be implemented to assist with the reduction and mitigation of SPAD and operational incidents associated with On-track Machine movements.

COP0111 Iss 6 October 2011 (A)
Code of Practice for Hiring In of Route Conductors
This Code of Practice provides guidance regarding the occupational competence for drivers to undertake on-track machine / train route conducting duties.

COP0113 Iss 5 November 2011 (A)
Code of Practice for Professional Driving of OTM
This Code of Practice provides guidance regarding professional driving techniques for On-Track Machine driving to mitigate operational risks. It includes an Appendix which forms a standalone handbook for Professional Driving of OTM.

RELATED DOCUMENTS

TAN002 Iss 1 April 2008 (A)
Technical Advice Note for Labelling of RRV Excavator Cranes for Lifting Operations
This technical advice notes is provided by the M&EE Networking Group to remind industry of the position regarding labelling for lifting with RRV excavator cranes. A meeting of the plant RRV rail industry members in 2004 decided that, following the discovery of an error in the original Prolec RCI configuration (RCIs are Rated Capacity Indicators – previously known as Safe Load Indicators) the machines are to be limited in their lift and carry duties until modified. The status of the machine was to be shown by a label on the side.

M&EE POSTERS

Poster 01 Iss 1 May 2008 (A)
Lifting of Trailers Poster
This poster is provided by the M&EE Networking Group to remind the industry that all lifting activities, including lifting trailers, must always be properly planned and site specific - even if a generic lift plan is available.

Poster 02 Iss 1 October 2008 (A)
MEWP Planning Poster
This poster is provided by the M&EE Networking Group to remind industry that all MEWP activities must be properly planned and site specific - even if a generic plan is available.

Poster 03 Iss 1 April 2009 (A)
Tandem Lifting Poster
This poster is provided by the M&EE Networking Group to remind industry that all tandem lifting activities should always be properly planned as mandated by LOLER and in accordance with M&EE COP0008.

Poster 04 Iss 1 July 2009 (A)
On Track Plant (OTP) towed loads Poster
This poster is provided by the M&EE Networking Group to remind industry that if not fitted with a service brake the towed load should not exceed 100% of the weight of the towing vehicle.

Poster 05 Iss 1 November 2009 (A)
Autumn / winter and low adhesion operations of OTP Poster
This poster is provided by the M&EE Networking Group to remind industry that driving technique needs to be adjusted to suit the prevailing rail head conditions.

Poster 06 Iss 1 November 2010 (A)
RCI Motion Cut During Tandem Lifting Poster
This poster is provided by the M&EE Networking Group to offer guidance should a motion cut occur during tandem lifting with RRV excavator cranes.

Poster 07 Iss 1 January 2011 (A)
RRV Braking Poster
This poster is provided by the M&EE Networking Group to remind industry that RRV's take longer to stop than the equivalent road vehicle.

Poster 09 Iss 1 May 2011 (A)
Points Run Through
This poster is provided by the M&EE Networking Group to remind industry about driving technique relating to points.

Poster 10 Iss 1 December 2011 (A)
Rated Capacity Indicator (RCI) Status Indicator Lights
This poster is provided by the M&EE Networking Group to remind industry about coloured indicator lights fitted to RRV excavator cranes and the interpretation of their meaning.

Poster 11 Iss 1 January 2012 (A)
Distributor Isolating Cock (DIC)
This poster is provided by the M&EE Networking Group to remind industry that drivers of OTM should check position of distributor isolating cock handle during their prep, and advises on driving technique concerning interpretation of cab gauges and use of direct brake.

Poster 12 Iss 1 July 2012 (A)
Have you had your brief
This poster is provided by the M&EE Networking Group to remind staff that they must receive a briefing before commencing work.

Poster 13 Iss 1 September 2011 (A)
OTM Movements Involving Route Conductors
This poster is provided by the M&EE Networking Group to remind drivers and route conductors of their responsibilities, and that good communication is key.

Poster 15 Iss 1a October 2012 (A)
Using outriggers on plant
This poster is provided by the M&EE Networking Group to remind planners and users of plant with outriggers that stability can be seriously affected if the ground conditions are not taken into account at the planning stage.

Poster 16 Iss 1 October 2012 (A)
Leaf Fall Alert
This poster is provided by the M&EE Networking Group to remind industry that driving technique needs to be adjusted to suit the leaf fall season.

RSSB TECHNICAL NOTES

Technical Notes have been introduced as a rapid means of providing clarification on issues relating to the assessment of Rolling Stock for conformity with Railway Group Standards where inconsistencies in the understanding of Railway Group Standards and the application of assessment processes have been identified.

They are also used as a means of providing clarification on issues relating to the understanding of Rail Industry Standards.

The object of the Technical Notes is to improve consistency of interpretation of Railway Group Standards and Rail Industry Standards, and the application of assessment processes. They are also used to share good practice for the benefit of all parties. These documents are available on the Railway Group Standards website.

TN001 Iss 2 February 2010
Scope of Certificate
This TN001 references GMRT2000 Issue 3

TN002 Iss 2 February 2010
Superseding Certificates
This TN002 references GMRT2000 Issue 3

TN003 Iss 2 February 2010
Special Limitations
This TN003 references GMRT2000 Issue 3

TN004 Iss 2 February 2010
Vehicles Temporarily Removed from Traffic
This TN004 references GMRT2000 Issue 3

TN006 Iss 2 February 2010
Issuing Certificates of Engineering Acceptance
This TN006 references GMRT2000 Issue 3

TN007 Iss 2 February 2010
Transit Movement Certificates
This TN007 references GMRT2000 Issue 3

TN008 Iss 2 February 2010
Issuing Fleet Certificates of Engineering Acceptance
This TN008 references GMRT2000 Issue 3

TN009 Iss 1 November 2002
Vehicle gauging in relation to Design Conformance
Applicable to GMRT2149 Issue 2 and 3

TN010 Iss 2 February 2010
Construction Conformance Certification
This TN010 references GMRT2000 Issue 3

TN011 Iss 2 February 2010
Listing Certificates of Conformance on E.A. Certs
This TN011 references GMRT2000 Issue 3

TN012 Iss 2 February 2010
Identification of the Maintenance Plan
This TN012 references GMRT2000 Issue 3

TN013 Iss 2 February 2010
Special Limitations on Superseding Certificates
This TN013 references GMRT2000 Issue 3

TN014 Iss 2 February 2010
Issuing of Engineering Acceptance Certificates
This TN014 references GMRT2000 Issue 3

TN015 Iss 2 February 2010
Issuing of RSLEA4 Forms
This TN015 references GMRT2000 Issue 3

TN016 Iss 1 March 2003
Pantograph Sway
This TN016 references GMRT2149 Issue 2 and 3

TN018 Iss 2 December 2011
Overall Braking Performance (Retardation) Indicators
This TN018 has been up-issued due to the revision of GMRT2045, arising from a small scale change proposal 10/42. TN018 clarifies when the fitment of retardation rate indicators is required.

TN020 Iss 2 February 2010
Direct Replacement Component Certification
This TN020 references GMRT2000 Issue 3

TN023 Iss 2 February 2010
Direct Replacement Component Certification
This TN023 references GMRT2000 Issue 3

TN025 Iss 2 February 2010
Transit Movement Certificates
This TN025 references GMRT2000 Issue 3

TN026 Iss 2 February 2010
Maintenance Bulletins and Certification
This TN026 references GMRT2000 Issue 3

TN027 Iss 2 February 2010
Improving Maintenance Without EA Certification
This TN027 references GMRT2000 Issue 3

RELATED DOCUMENTS

TN028 Iss 3 February 2010
Minor Repairs
This TN028 references GMRT2000 Issue 3

TN029 Iss 3 February 2010
Minor Modifications
This TN029 references GMRT2000 Issue 3

TN031 Iss 2 December 2011
Brake Release and Application Timings
This TN031 has been up-issued due to small scale change proposal 10/042. TN031 provides guidance on reviewing brake release timings and application timings when reviewed during scrutiny for Design, Construction or Maintenance Conformance or Engineering Acceptance.

TN032 Iss 2 March 2012
Train Protection and Warning System (TPWS) 'First of Class' test
TN032 has been reissued due to the reissue of GERT8030. TN032 provides clarification on the 'First of Class' test to satisfy the requirements of GERT8030.

TN033 Iss 2 February 2010
Change of Vehicle Livery as a Minor Modification
This TN033 references GMRT2000 Issue 3

TN034 Iss 2 February 2010
Roll-up of Certificates of Design Conformance
This TN034 references GMRT2000 Issue 3

TN040 Iss 3 April 2010
GSM-R fitment to railway vehicles
This TN040 references GMRT2000 Issue 3

TN041 Iss 2 December 2011
Registering the fitment of GSM-R to railway vehicles on the Rolling Stock Library
This TN041 has been re-issued against GMRT2000 issue 3 as a new requirement has been incorporated into GMRT2453 issue 2, Appendix B1.11 under proposal 06/131.
TN041 applies when needing to register the fitment of GSM-R to railway vehicles on the Rolling Stock Library (RSL) and provides advice on the timing of registration.

TN046 Iss 1 June 2010
Contact Stress Calculation Methodology
This TN references GMTT0088 Issue 1.

TN-index Iss 22 December 2012
Index to Rolling Stock Assessment Technical Notes
The Technical Note Index has been updated to reflect the withdrawal of TN043, TN044, TN045 and TN047; all have been replaced by RIS-1530-PLT Iss 4.

Uncontrolled When Printed

Index of Subjects

Introduction
A-Z Alphabetical Listing of Subjects

Uncontrolled When Printed

Absolute block
Signallers regulations GERT8000-TS3
See 'Block signalling systems'
AC electrification
See 'Electrified lines – AC'
Acceptance
See 'Engineering acceptance'
Access
Information & signs GORT3413
Access – traincrew
– GMRT2162
Access to infrastructure
See 'Working on infrastructure or rail vehicles'
Accidents & incidents
-GORT3118, GOGN3518, GORT3119, GOGN3519
Communication of urgent operational advice GORT3350
Dangerous goods GERT8000-G1
Doors – action following accidents GMRT2273
Emergency transhipment of dangerous goods GORT3053-G
Fires involving dangerous goods GORT3053-F
Operational instructions GERT8000-M1
Provisional SPAD Data Collection Forms – Form GORT3119-A, Form GORT3119-B, Form GORT3119-C, Form GORT3119-D
Rail adhesion – low GERT8040, GEGN8540
Safety performance monitoring GORT3350
Track circuits – non-operation due to leaf fall GORT3208
Train accidents GERT8000-G1
Accidents & incidents – reporting
-GERT8047
Confidential reporting RIS-3701-TOM
Emergency transhipment of dangerous goods GORT3053-G
Fires involving dangerous goods GORT3053-F
Freight trains – see 'Working of freight trains'
Safety related information GERT8047
Vehicle & plant defects GORT3350
Accommodation crossing
See 'Level crossing'
Adhesion – low
Measurement GMGN2642
Sanders GMRT2461
Simulation GMGN2643
Aerodynamics
Aerodynamic rolling moment coefficient GMRC2542
Pressure pulses GMRT2100
Resistance to roll-over in gales GMRT2142
Air quality – traincrew
– GMRT2176
Alcohol & drugs
Drugs & alcohol GERT8070, GEGN8570
Medical fitness GORC3561
Asset management
Retention of information GEGN8565
Audibility
– GMRT2484
Audible warning device
See also 'Warning systems devices'
Automatic train protection (ATP)
Space envelope GMGN2572
Automatic warning system (AWS)
AWS and TPWS Handbook RS522
Maintenance of AWS trainborne equipment GMGN2169
Requirements GERT8035
Axle bearings
Action following detection of overheating GEGN8614, GERT8014
Detection by hot axle-box detectors (HABD) GEGN8614, GERT8014
Maintenance & overhaul GMGN2646
Monitoring of performance GEGN8614, GERT8014,
On board detection systems GEGN8614, GERT8014, Risk management GEGN8614, GERT8014,
Axle branding
- GMRT2466
Axle counters
Installation GERT8217

B

Bearings – axle
Risk management GEGN8614, GERT8014
Maintenance & overhaul GMGN2646
Block signalling systems
Absolute block GKRT0042
Absolute block regulations GERT8000-TS3
Electric token block regulations GERT8000-TS4
Entering occupied lines GKRT0044
No-signaller token regulations GERT8000-TS7
One-train working regulations GERT8000-TS8
Radio electronic token BR1654, GKRT0054, GKGN0554
Tokenless block regulations GERT8000-TS5
Track circuit GKRT0041
Track circuit block regulations GERT8000-TS2
Bonding
Electrified lines – traction GLRT1254
Telecommunications equipment (Earth) GKRT0053, GKGN0653, GLRT1254
Traction bonding – electrified lines GLRT1254
Bonding – T&RS to rail potential
– GMRC2514, GMRT2304
Brake regulations
Exceptional loads GORT3407
Brakes
Brake force data GMRT2040
Freight vehicles GMRT2043
Hauling unbraked multiple units GMGN2607
Lineside signal spacing GKRT0075, GKGN0675
Multiple units GMRT2044
Performance operating above 125 mile/h GMRT2046
Principles GMRT2045
Traction Units GMRT2042
Trailer coaching stock GMRT2041
Bridges
See 'Structures'
Bridge Strikes
Operational instructions GERT8000-TW1

Uncontrolled When Printed

Buffer stops
Terminal Stations GIGN7616
Terminal tracks – GCRT5033

C

Cabs
See 'Driving cab'
Cables
Balanced pair cable GKRT0053, GKGN0653
Telecommunications – voltage transmission level maxima GKRT0053, GKGN0653
Carriage of goods
Conveyance of containers Form RT3973-CON
Exceptional loads GORT3407, Form RT3973-CON, Form RT3973-EXL,
Heavy axle weight wagon Form RT3973-HAW
Out of gauge loads GORT3407
Radioactive flask traffic Form RT3973-NUC
See also 'Dangerous goods'
Chain saw
See 'Plant & work equipment – use of'
Change
GERT8012, GERT8019
Changes to infrastructure
- GERT8012, GERT8019
Electromagnetic compatibility (EMC) GERT8015
Terminal tracks GCRT5033
Classification of trains
Classification and speed GERT8000-TW1
Clearances
Controlling tilt systems GERT8019
Electrification GERT8025
Electrified lines GERT8025
Exceptional loads GORT3407
Information & signs GORT3413
Kinematic gauging requirements GMRT2149
Passing clearances GCRT5212
Structure clearances GCRT5212
Vehicle size GMRT2149
See also 'Gauging'
Closed circuit television
Forward and rear facing GMGN2606
Colour – safety implications for signalling
– GIRT7033
Communications
Emergency and safety information GMRC2533, GMRT2130
Recording and monitoring GEGN8516
Safety GERT8046
Compatibility
Trains & electrification systems GERT8023

Competence
Competence development RS100
Competence management RS100
Route knowledge and retention RIS-3702-TOM
Competency
Axle bearing maintenance GMGN2646
Non-destructive testing (NDT) RIS-2701-RST
See also requirements in individual standards
Computer systems
Shared information systems GERT8054
Construction – structures
See 'Structures'
Contingency plans
Defective on train equipment GORC3537, GORT3437
Control systems
Maintenance GERT8018
Overrun protection GERT8018
Relationship with lineside signalling GKRT0036, GKGN0626
Speed supervision and control systems GERT8012
Couplings
Electrical GMRT2190
Mechanical GMRT2190, GMGN2650, GMGN2689
Crane – rail mounted
See 'Plant & work equipment – use of'
Crossing systems
See 'Points & crossings'

D

Dangerous goods
Acceptance – conditions of GORT3421
Accidents GERT8000-G1
Bulk traffic, wagon and container separation distances GORT3053-2
Carriage GOGN3676
Classification, acceptance and identification GORT3053-A
Exceptional loads GORT3407
Fires GORT3053-F
Fires and incidents involving dangerous goods GORT3053-F
Fog signals GEGN8532
Handling and carriage of dangerous goods - glossary GORT3053
Hazard identification labels GORT3053-E
Hazard identification GORT3053-B
Loading GORT3053-C
Marshalling GORT3053-C
Pink pages Briefing leaflet GORT3053-PPBL
Radioactive materials – conditions of acceptance & carriage GORT3407
United nations numbers, dangerous goods classes and TOPS commodity codes GORT3053-1
Data
Data recorders – see 'Train data recorders'
Displayed on rail vehicles GMRT2453
Gauging data – RIS-2773-RST
Mandatory data for rail vehicles GMRT2453
Shared data RIS-2706-RST
DC Electrification
See 'Electrified lines – DC'
Dead traction unit
See 'Inoperative traction unit'
Defective on-train equipment
Operational instructions GERT8000-TW5
Demolition – structures
See 'Structures'

Uncontrolled When Printed

Derailment – resistance to
Static testing GMRC2641
– GMRT2141
Design
Design scrutiny GMRT2001
Detonators
See 'Fog signals'
Doors
Action following accident or incident GMRT2273
Power operated GMRT2473, GEGN8577
Secondary locking GOOTS303
Selective door operation GEGN8577
Doors on trains
Power operated – operational requirements GMRT2473
Secondary locking GOOTS303
Driver only operation (DOO)
See 'Stations'
Driver-only operation of passenger trains
Light rail vehicles GEGN8502
Drivers of trains
See 'Train driver'
Driver's reminder appliance (DRA)
Design requirements for a driver's reminder appliance (DRA) GMRT2491
Driving cab
- GMRT2160
Access & egress GMRT2162
Air quality & lighting GMRT2176
Displays – use of colour GIRT7033
Requirements GMRT2161
Signalling systems GEGN8526, GERT8026
Use of mobile telephonic equipment RIS-3776-TOM
Drugs & alcohol
See 'Alcohol & drugs'
- GERT8070, GEGN8570

E

Earth moving equipment
See 'Plant & work equipment – use of'
Egress – traincrew
– GMRT2162
Electric token block
See 'Block signalling systems'
Electrical
Electrical Interface GKGN0622
Voltage GLRT1255
Electrical equipment
Infrastructure support vehicles GMRT2307
Labels – warning signs GMRT2130
Electrical interconnection of T&RS
– GMRT2190
Electrified lines
Bonding – see 'Bonding'
Clearance requirements GERT8025
Compatibility with trains GERT8023
Description of the system GERT8000-DC
Instructions GERT8000-DC
Isolation diagram RIS-1800-ENE
Light rail vehicles GEGN8502
OLE warning line on vehicles GMRT2181
Safe working GERT8024, GMRT1041
Traction bonding GLRT1254
Warning signs & notices GMRT1041
Electrified lines – AC
GERT8024, GERT8000-HB16
Traction bonding GLRT1254
Electrified lines – DC
- GLRT1254, GERT8000-HB17
Stray currents GLRT1253
Working instructions GERT8000-DC
Electromagnetic compatibility (EMC)
Between infrastructure & trains GERT8015
Route acceptance GERT8015
Susceptibility data GERT8015
Emergencies
Stopping a train GERT8000-G1
Emergency equipment
GMRT2130, GMRC2532
Emergency planning
Shared running with light rail vehicles GEGN8502
Emergency speed restrictions
See 'Speed restrictions'
Energy
Guidance on the conventional rail energy TSI GEGN8600
Systems GEGN8623
On-board energy metering for billing purposes GMRT2132
Engineering acceptance
Acceptance testing GMRC2510
Certification GMRT2000
Design scrutiny GMRT2001
On-track machine GMRT2400, GMGN2575
Process GMRT2000
Rail mounted maintenance machine (RMMM) RIS-1530-PLT
Road–rail vehicle (RRV) RIS-1530-PLT
Route acceptance GERT8270
Safe testing of vehicles GMRC2559
Steam locomotive GMRT2003
Engines – internal combustion
– GMRT2130
Engineering work
Exceptional loads GORT3407
Radio electronic token block lines GKRT0054
Safe working on AC electrified lines GERT8024
See also "Track safety"
Taking possession of the line GERT8000-T3
Environment – air quality & lighting
– GMRT2176
Equipment
Communication of urgent operational advice GORT3350
Defective on train equipment GORC3537, GORT3437
Emergency GMRT2130, GMRC2532
Low GLRT1255
Reporting failures GERT8106
Safety equipment on T&RS GMRT2130, GMRC2532
Equipment – communications
Track circuit block GKRT0041
Equipment – signalling
GERT8012, GERT8019

Uncontrolled When Printed

Absolute block GKRT0042
AWS – see 'Automatic warning system (AWS)'
Cab signalling system GEGN8526, GERT8026
Cab signalling system display GIRT7033
Colour – use of GIRT7033
Identification GKRT0009
Lineside signs GIRT7033
Mechanical signalling GKRT0039
Points – see 'Points & crossings'
Radio electronic token block BR1654, GKRT0054
Semaphore signalling GKRT0039
Signing GIRT7033
Single line control GKRT0051
Speed restrictions GERC8517
Track circuit block GKRT0041
Equipment – telecommunications
Bonding (Earth) GKRT0053, GKGN0653
Identification – telephones GERT8048
Lineside signs GERT8048
Lineside telephony GOGN3677
See also 'Telecommunications directive'
Equipotential bonding of T&RS
– GMRC2514, GMRT2304
ERTMS
GERT8000-RBBL ERTMS Briefing leaflet
GERT8000-T2 ERTMS
Amendments GERT8000-AM ERTMS
ETCS system description – GEGN8605
ETCS onboard equipment RIS-0340-CCS
Key management GERT8403, GEGN8603
Pilotman GERT8000-P2 ERTMS
Bi-directional lines GERT8000-P2 ERTMS
National identities GERT8072, GEGN8672
National values GERT8408, GEGN8608
Single lines GERT8000-P2 ERTMS
Shunting GERT8000-S4 ERTMS
Passing an end authority (EOA) GERT8000-S5 ERTMS
Without a movement authority(MA) GERT8000-S5 ERTMS
Cab signalling GERT8000-S6 ERTMS
Speeds – GERT8000-SP ERTMS
Possession – GERT8000-T3 ERTMS
On-track plant GERT8000-T11 ERTMS
Signalling – GERT8000-TS10 ERTMS
Level crossings on ERTMS lines – GERT8000-TW8 ERTMS
Erection of structures
See 'Structures'
ETCS
Driver machine interface GERT8402, GEGN8602
Evacuation
- GMRT2130, GMRC2530, GMRC2534
Excavator
See 'Plant & work equipment – use of'
Exceptional loads
– GORT3407
Experiments
- GMRC2515
Explosives
-GOGN3676

F

Failures
Communication of urgent operational advice GORT3350
Operational instructions GERT8000-T1A, T1B
Reporting RIS-3701-TOM, GERT8250
Signalling equipment GERT8106
Signalling failures – control facilities GERT8071, GEGN8571
Signalling failures – safety management GERT8106
Telecommunications equipment GERT8106
See also 'Telecommunications maintenance instructions
Telecommunications failures – safety management GERT8106
Fire
Fires involving dangerous goods GORT3053-F
Protection systems GMRT2130, GMRC2530
Requirements to control risk GMRT2130, GMRC2530
Fire safety
Dangerous goods – see 'Dangerous goods'
Fire safety requirements at sub-surface stations TDGEN096
Fatigue
Fatigue Management RS504
Fitness for duty
Drugs and alcohol GERT8070, GEGN8570
Fatigue Management RS504
Fog signals
Supply, control, disposal GEGN8532
Forklift truck
See 'Plant & work equipment – use of'
Freight trains
See 'Working of freight trains'
Freight vehicles
Crippling and release of RIS-2705-RST
Design & construction – tanks GMGN2688
In-service inspections RIS-2702-RST
Labelling of vehicles – dangerous goods GORT3053-C

G

Gauging
Clearances GCRT5212
Exceptional loads GORT3407
Gauging acceptance GERT8270
Gauging data RIS-2773-RST
Guidance on gauging GEGN8573
Platforms GIRT7016
Structure gauging & clearances GMRT2149
Sway test GMRC2641
Vehicle size GMRT2149
Geometric interface – wheeltrack
– GMRT2466
Green zone working
See also 'Working on infrastructure or rail vehicles'
Grinder
See 'Plant & work equipment – use of'
GSM-R
RIS-3082-CCS, GEGN8582
Cell planning NS-GSM-R-CELL-9501

Uncontrolled When Printed

Communication NS-GSM-R-CELL-9501, GERT8080, GERT8081, GERT8082
GSM-R (IVRS) RS520

H

Handbook
Duties of the COSS and person in charge when using a hand trolley GERT8000-HB10
Duties of the engineering supervisor (ES) GERT8000-HB12
Duties of the machine controller (MC) and on-track plant operator GERT8000-HB15
Duties of the person in charge of a possession (PICOP) GERT8000-HB11
Duties of the person in charge of loading and unloading rail vehicles during engineering work GERT8000-HB14
Duties of the person in charge of the siding possession (PICOS) GERT8000-HB13
Emergency protection equipment GERT8000-HB2
General duties of an individual working alone (IWA) GERT8000-HB6
General duties of a controller of site safety (COSS) GERT8000-HB7
Handsignalling GERT8000-HB5
Issue History GERT8000-Issue HB
IWA, COSS or PC blocking a line GERT8000-HB8
IWA or COSS setting up safe systems of work within possessions GERT8000-HB9
Lookout GERT8000-HB3
Points operator GERT8000-HB4
Route-setting agent GERT8000-HB4
Site warden GERT8000-HB3
Track workers GERT8000-HB1, GERT8000-HB2
Handsignals
When they can be used GERT8000-G1
High visibility clothing
– GORT3279
Hot axle-box detector (HABD)
Risk assessment GEGN8614, GERT8014
Risk management processes GEGN8614, GERT8014
Scanning of light rail vehicles GEGN8502
Siting and performance GEGN8614, GERT8014

I

Identification of rail vehicles
– GMRT2453
Identification
Signalling equipment GKGN0609, GKRT0009
Identification – telephones
Telephones GERT8048
Incidents
See ‘Accidents & incidents’
Information systems
Shared information systems GERT8054
Infrastructure
Compatability assessment GERT8270
Gauging GERT8073, GEGN8573
Infrastructure safety management
GERT8012, GERT8019
Absolute Block GKRT0042
Communications systems failures GERT8106
Overrun protection & mitigation GIGN7606, GIRT7006
Route availability system GERT8006
Safe working on AC electrified lines GERT8024
Signalling failures GERT8106
Telecommunications systems failures GERT8106
Track circuit block GKRT0041
Infrastructure support vehicles
Power supplies GMRT2307
Infrastructure – working on
See ‘Working on infrastructure or rail vehicles’
Inoperative traction unit
See also ‘Out of gauge loads’
Inspections
Freight vehicle in-service inspections RIS-2702-RST
Interface
Geometric – wheeltrack GMRT2466
Interiors
Air quality & lighting GMRT2176
Communications GMRC2533, GMRT2130
Interlocking
Principles GKRT0060
Internal combustion engine
- GMRT2130

J

none

K

Kinematic gauging
– GMRT2149

L

Labels
See ‘Signs & labels’
Labelling of defective wagons
Information for safe operation GORT3436
Leaf fall
Non-operation of track circuits GORT3208
Sanders GMRT2461
Level crossings
Interface requirements GKRT0192, GKGN0692
Level crossing attendant GERT8000-HB18
Operational instructions GERT8000-TW8
Signallers instructions GERT8000-TS9
Lifting equipment
See also ‘Plant & work equipment – use of’
Light Vehicles
Shared running GEGN8502, GMRT2452
Lighting
– GMRT2176, GMRT2130, GMRC2531
Railway premises GIGN7520
Tunnels GIRT7019

Uncontrolled When Printed

Lineside signalling
Relation with other systems GKRT0036, GKGN0626
Loader
See 'Plant & work equipment – use of'
Loading
See 'Working of freight trains'
Locks – secondary
-GOOTS303

M

Maintenance
Axle bearings – training GMGN2646
Clearances GCRT5212
Driving cabs GMRT2161
Fire performance retention GMRT2130, GMRC2530
Freight vehicle in-service inspections RIS-2702-RST
Gauging GMRT2149
Low rail adhesion – remedial action GERT8040, GEGN8540
Magnetic particle inspection GMRT2466
Maintenance of AWS and TPWS trainborne GMGN2169
Operational instructions for signallers and technicians - GERT8000-T1A
Plan GMRT2004
Policy GMRT2004
Size of vehicle GMRT2149
System data RSI-2706-RST
Wheelsets – in service GMRT2466
Wheelsets – off vehicle GMRT2466
Management of signalling & telecomms failures
– GERT8106
Mandatory data for rail vehicles
GMRT2453
Medical fitness
GORC3561,
Safety critical workers GOGN3655
Metering
On-board energy metering for billing purposes GMRT2132
Modifications
– GMRC2515
See also 'Engineering acceptance'
Monitoring safety
- GORT3350
Performance GERT8250
Movement of inoperative traction unit
- GMGN2685
See also 'Out of gauge loads'

N

National Operations Publications
Changes to National Operations Publications GERT8001
Noise
- GMGN2460
Measurement GMRT2484
Non-destructive testing (NDT)
RIS-2701-RST
Notices & warning signs
See 'Signs & labels'

O

Occupation crossing
See 'Level crossing'
On or near the line
General instructions GERT8000-G1
On-track machine
Design GMRT2400, GMRT2575
Engineering acceptance – see 'Engineering acceptance'
Operational instructions GERT8000-OTM
See also 'Plant & work equipment – use of'
Operational procedures
Control of overrun risk GIGN7606, GIRT7006
Hauling unbraked multiple units GMGN2607
See also 'Working of trains'
Operational concept for the GB mainline railway
RSSB-GBMR-OC
Organisational change
See 'Change'
Out of gauge loads
Exceptional loads GORT3407
Operating instructions GERT8000-TS1
Overhaul
See 'Maintenance'
Overrun protection
GIGN7606, GIRT7006, GKRT0064
Overturning – resistance to
– GCRC5521

P

Packet 44
– GERT8064
Passenger trains
See 'Working of trains'
Passing a signal at danger
Operating instructions GERT8000-S5
Permanent way
See 'Track'
Permissible speed
- GERT8012
Signing GKRT0075, GKGN0675
Permissible working
Operating instructions GERT8000-TW1
Plant
Design requirements RIS-1701-PLT
Electrical power supplies GMRT2307
Monitoring safety GERT8250
On-track machine GMRT2400, GMGN2575
Rail mounted maintenance machine RIS-1530-PLT
Road–rail vehicle RIS-1530-PLT
Plant for infrastructure – use of
Competence RIS-1700-PLT
Cranes RIS-1700-PLT
Plant RIS-1700-PLT
Railborne plant RIS-1700-PLT
Plant & work equipment – use of
Exceptional loads GORT3407
Platform
Platforms for light rail vehicles GEGN8502
Station GIRT7016

Uncontrolled When Printed

Train dispatch – engineering requirements GERT8060, GEGN8560
Train dispatch – operational requirements RIS-3703-TOM
Points & crossings
Colour – use of GIRT7033
Flank protection GKRT0064
Identification GKRT0009
Local control of signalling equipment GKRT0061
Securing points GERT8000-G1
Switch & crossings GCRT5021
Track – see 'Track'
Trap – overrun protection GKRT0064
Possession
See 'Engineering work'
Propelling
Authority for making movements GERT8000-TW1
Protection of staff
Identification of warning system GKRT0009
Protection systems – fire
Requirements GMRT2130, GMRC2530
Publications
-GERT8019
Requirements for the Weekly Operating Notice, Periodical Operating Notice and Sectional Appendix GORT3215

Q

Qualification of suppliers
Safety critical products & services GMRT2450

R

Radio
Cab secure radio – RS516
Cell planning NS-GSM-R-CELL-9501
Communication GERT8080, GERT8081
National radio network BR1609
Radioactive materials
-GOGN3676
Rail adhesion – low
Identification, reporting & rectification GERT8040, GEGN8540
Sanding equipment GMRT2461
Rail incident officer
High visibility clothing GORT3279
Rail-mounted cranes
See 'Plant & work equipment – use of'
Rail mounted maintenance machine (RMMM)
Design RIS-1530-PLT
Engineering acceptance GMRT2042, RIS-1530-PLT
Rail scooter
See 'Plant & work equipment – use of'
Rail vehicle
Accidents & incidents GMRT2273
Gauging GMRT2149
Gauging data RIS-2773-RST
Guidance on the Conventional Rail Locomotives and Information for safe operation GORT3436
Passenger Rolling Stock TSI GMGN2615
Guidance on testing of wheel slide protection systems Fitted on rail vehicles GMGN2695
Light rail vehicle running GEGN8502
Rail vehicle weight underline bridge interface GERT8006
Safety monitoring GERT8250
Taking out of service GORC3537, GORT3437
Testing GMRT2273
See also 'Working on infrastructure or rail vehicles'
Rail vehicle interior
Air quality and lighting GMRT2176
Communications GMRT2130, GMRC2533
Rails
See 'Track'
Railway Safety Case (RSC)
Tramlight rail operators GEGN8502
Recommissioning of T&RS
- GMGN2571
Records
Asset management GEGN8565
Safety performance of axle bearings GMGN2646
Repair
See 'Maintenance'
Reporting
See 'Accidents & incidents – reporting'
Road–Rail plant
See also 'Plant & work equipment – use of'
Road–rail vehicle (RRV)
Design RIS-1530-PLT
Engineering acceptance RIS-1530-PLT
Rolling Stock
Clearances GERT8073, GEGN8573
Guidance on the Conventional Rail Locomotives and Passenger Rolling Stock TSI GMGN2615
Roll-over – resistance to
– GCRC5521
– GMRT2141
Aerodynamic rolling moment coefficient GMRC2542
Resistance to roll-over in gales GMRT2142
Weighbridge test GMRC2641
Rooftop antenna
CSR GKGN0602
GSM-R GKGN0602
NRN GKGN0602
Multi band GKGN0602
Positioning GKGN0602
Route Acceptance
– GERT8270
Electromagnetic compatibility (EMC) GERT8015
Stepping distances GMRT2149
Route acceptance of rail vehicles
– GERT8270
Stepping distances GMRT2149
Sway test GMRC2641
Route availability
Exceptional loads GORT3407
Freight vehicle codes GORM3056
Route availability system
Exceptional loads GORT3407
Rail vehicle weight underline bridge interface GERT8006
Weighbridge test GMRC2641

Uncontrolled When Printed

Rule Book (RB)
Amendments module GERT8000-AM
Briefing leaflet GERT8000-RBBL,
GERT8000-RBBL ERTMS
Duties of a designated person (DP) GERT8000-T10
General safety responsibilities GERT8000-G1
Module issue history GERT8000-Issue
Index and glossary GERT8000-Index
Train accident or train evacutation GERT8000-M1
Train stopped by train failure GERT8000-M2
Managing incidents, floods and snow GERT8000-M3
Single line working – GERT8000-P1
Working single and bi-directional lines by pilotman
GERT8000-P2
Signalling regulations GERT8000-TS1
Wrong-direction movements GERT8000-TW7

S

Safety
Communications GERT8046
Identifying Hazards GEGN8642
Reducing Risk GEGN8643
Risk Assessment GEGN8642
Safety critical workers
See 'Medical fitness'
Fatigue Management RS504
Safety equipment on rail vehicles
GMRT2130, GMRC2532
Safety examinations of rail vehicles
Magnetic particle inspection GMRT2466
Safety management
See 'Infrastructure safety management'
Safety monitoring
GERT8106
Safety performance monitoring
GERT8106
Safety-related information
Colour – use of GIRT7033
Safety related information – transmission
Reporting GERT8047
Safety systems - trains
– GMRT2185
Security
General GORT3600
Self-propelled on-track machine
See 'On-Track Machine'
Self-propelled road–rail recovery vehicle
See 'Road-rail plant'
Shared running with trams
Shared running GEGN8502
Shunting
Operational instructions GERT8000-SS2
Sideloader
See 'Plant & work equipment – use of'
Signalling
- GERT8034, GERT8037, GEGN8537
AWS – see 'Automatic warning system (AWS)'
Cab systems GEGN8526, GERT8026
Entering occupied lines GKRT0044
Management of failures GERT8106
Proceed-on-sight authority GERT8000-PoSA
Radio electronic token block GKRT0054
Signal spacing GKRT0075, GKGN0675
Signalling regulations GERT8000-TS1
Signaller's line blockage form – Form R3180 12-10
Transition – lineside other systems GKRT0036,
GKGN0626
Signalling & telecommunications – trainborne
Management of signalling failures GERT8106
Management of telecommunications failures GERT8106
Signalling equipment
See also 'Equipment – signalling'
Signalling systems
GKGN0636
Electrical Interface GKGN0622
Lookout systems GKRT0212, GKGN0612
Radio electronic block GKRT0054
See also 'Block signalling systems'
Signalling system design
Absolute block GKRT0042
Cab signalling system GEGN8526, GERT8026
Overrun protection GIGN7606, GIRT7006
Track circuit block GKRT0041
Signals
Fog – detonators GEGN8532
Signals & signalling systems
Absolute block GKRT0042
Absolute block regulations GERT8000-TS3
Approach locking GKRT0063
AWS – see 'Automatic warning system (AWS)'
Cab signalling system GEGN8526, GERT8026
Colour – use of GIRT7033
Design – see 'Signalling system design'
Electric token block regulations GERT8000-TS4
Electromagnetic compatibility (EMC) GERT8015
Entering occupied lines GKRT0044
Failures - operational instructions GERT8000-T1A, T1B
Failures – safety management GERT8106
Flank protection GKRT0064
Identification of equipment GKRT0009
Interlocking GKRT0060
Lineside Indicators and layout of signals GKRT0045,
GKGN0645
Lockout systems GKRT0212, GKGN0612
Mechanical signalling GKRT0039
No-signaller token regulations GERT8000-TS7
One-train working regulations GERT8000-TS8
Operational instructions GERT8000-S1
Overrun protection GIGN7606, GIRT7006
Points – see 'Points & crossings'
Radio electronic token block BR1654
Semaphore signalling GKRT0039
Signal sighting GERT8034, GERT8037, GEGN8537
Signal spacing GKRT0075, GKGN0675
Signalling terms GKGN0802
Signs GERT8012
Speed GERT8012
Speed restrictions GERT8012
Tokenless block regulations GERT8000-TS5

Uncontrolled When Printed

Track circuit block GKRT0041
Track circuit block regulations GERT8000-TS2
Track circuits – see 'Track circuits'
Train operated route release GKRT0063
Trainstops GERT8018
Transition between systems GKRT0036, GKGN0626
Trapping GKRT0064
See also 'Equipment – signalling'
See also 'Standard signalling prinicple'
Signs
Information and signs GORT3413
Lineside signs GCRC5521, GERC8517, GIRT7033
Lineside signs – light rail vehicles GEGN8502
Temporary & emergency speed restrictions GIRT7033
Warning – electrified lines GMRT1041
Signs & labels
Electrified lines GMRT1041
Overhead line equipment (OLE) warning line GMRT2181
Signs – emergency & safety equipment GMRT2130, GMRC2533
Warning signs & labels – electrical equipment GMRT2130
Operating instructions GERT8000-S5
Speed
Enhanced permissible speed GERC8517
Signal spacing GKRT0075, GKGN0675
Speed supervision and control system GERC8517
Track geometry GCRC5521, GCRT5021
Speed restrictions
GERT8012
Enhanced permissible speed GCRC5521, GERC8517
Exceptional loads GORT3407
Operational instructions GERT8000-SP
Principles & rules GKRT0075, GKGN0675
Signing – temporary & emergency GIRT7033
Standard signalling principle
Permissive working GKRT0044
Stations
-GIRT7016
Automatic ticket gates RIS-7701-INS
Buffer stops GCRT5033, GCRC5633
Design GIGN7616
Fire safety requirements at sub-surface stations TDGEN096
Lighting GIGN7520
Platform GIGN7616
Station Infrastructure RIS-7700-INS
Telecommunications requirements TDGEN096
Station interface
GIRT7016
Steam locomotive
Certification requirements GMRT2003
Operational requirements GORT3440
Storage & recommissioning of T&RS
GMGN2571
Stray currents – electrification
GLRT1253
Strimmer
See 'Plant & work equipment – use of'
Structural requirements
Bogies GMRT2100, GMGN2686
Couplings GMRT2100
Equipment attached to bogies and axleboxes GMRT2100, GMGN2686
Lifeguards GMRT2100, GMGN2686
Obstacle deflectors GMRT2100
Rail vehicles GMRC2504, GMRT2100, GMGN2686, GMGN2687
Structures
Bridges – design GCRT5112
Bridges – loading GCRT5112
Platform GIRT7016
Route availability system GERT8006
Suppliers
See 'Qualification of suppliers'
Supply
Installations GLRT1255
Support vehicle electrical power system
– GMRT2307
Switches & crossings
– GCRT5021
See also 'Points & crossings'

T

Tanks of rail tank wagons
Design, construction, test & use GMGN2688
Use & periodic testing GMGN2688
Telecommunications
Voltage transmission level maxima GKRT0053, GKGN0653
Telecommunications directive
Band 111NRN base stations TDRAD054
Sub-surface stations TDGEN096
Telecommunications systems and equipment
GERT8037, GEGN8537
Bonding (Earth) – equipment GKRT0053, GKGN0653
Digital wireless technology for trains GEGN8579
Electrical Interface GKGN0622
Electromagnetic compatibility (EMC) GERT8015
Failures – safety management GERT8106
Lineside telephony GOGN3677
Management of failures GERT8106
Use of satellite navigation for trains GEGN8578
Wiring & terminations GTEHH802
See also 'Telecommunications directive'
Telecommunications equipment GKRT0053, GKGN0653
Telecommunications systems GKRT0053, GKGN0653
Telephone
Identification GERT8048
Lineside telephony GOGN3677
Signs GERT8048
Use of mobile telephonic equipment RIS-3776-TOM
Temporary block
See 'Block signalling systems'
Temporary speed restriction
See 'Speed restrictions'
Temporary vehicular level crossing
See 'Level crossing'
Terminal tracks
Buffer stops and arresting devices GCRC5633, GCRT5033

Uncontrolled When Printed

Testing
Magnetic particle inspection GMRT2466
Safe testing of vehicles GMRC2559
Tanks of rail tank wagons GMGN2688
Wheelsets GMRT2466
Testing – rail vehicles
Compatability of coupling systems GMRT2190
Guidance on testing of wheel slide protection systems
Fitted on rail vehicles GMGN2695
Interactions with electrification system GERT8016
Static testing GMRC2641
Testing – signalling & telecommunications
Interactions with electrification system GERT8016
Testing electrification
- Electrification system GERT8016
Tilting trains
– GERT8012
Tilt enable and supervision system (TE&SS) GERT8019
Tilt enable and supervision system (TE&SS) GERC8517, GERT8019
Token tokenless block
See 'Block signalling systems'
Timetabling
Overrun risk assessment GIGN7606, GIRT7006
Track
Buffer stops and arresting devices GCRC5633
Layout (Overrun Protection) GIGN7606, GIRT7006
Maintenance GCRT5021
Rail adhesion GERT8040, GEGN8540
Rail fastenings GCRT5021
Switch & crossings GCRT5021
Terminal tracks GCRT5033, GCRC5633
Track geometry GCRT5021
Track components GCRT5021
Track system requirements GCRT5021
See also 'Points & crossings'
Track circuit block regulations
See 'Block signalling systems'
Track circuits
Light rail vehicles GEGN8502
Non-operation during leaf fall period GORT3208
Track circuit actuator (TCA) GMRT2476, GMRC2576
Track circuit assister GMRT2477
Track forces
Geometric interface – wheelsettrack GMRT2466
Permissible track forces – commentary GMRC2513
Permissible track forces GMTT0088
Weighbridge test GMRC2641
Track jacks
See 'Plant & work equipment – use of'
Track safety
Electrified lines – see 'Electrified lines '
High visibility clothing GORT3279
Warning system – identification of GKRT0009
Traction units
Exceptional loads GORT3407
Train control & communications
- GERT8019
Packet 44 GERT8064
Train data recorders
Data extraction & analysis GMRT2472
Equipment & data management GMRT2472
Equipment requirements GMRT2472
Fitment requirements GMRT2472
Train data recorders GMRT2472
Train detection
Absolute block GKRT0042
Axle counters GERT8217
Interface requirements GKRT0028, GKGN0628
Track circuit block GKRT0041
See also 'Track circuits'
Train dispatch
Operational instructions GERT8000-SS1
Train driver
Competence GORT3451
Good practice guide on cognitive and individual risk factors RS232
Medical fitness GORT3451, GORC3561
Operational instructions GERT8000-SS1
Route knowledge and retention RIS-3702-TOM
Selection RIS-3751-TOM
Taking train out of service GORT3437, GORC3537
Train protection
AWS and TPWS Handbook RS522
Maintenance of TPWS trainborne Equipment GMGN2169
Train protection and warning systems (TPWS) GERT8030
Train safety systems GERT8012, GERT8019
Train radio communication
- GERT8080, GEGN8580
National radio network BR1609
Train working
Competence GORT3451
Good practice guide on cognitive and individual risk factors RS232
Information for safe operation GORT3436
Medical fitness GORC3561, GORT3451
Route knowledge and retention RIS-3702-TOM
Training
Competence development RS100
Trains
Electromagenetic compatibility (EMC) GERT8015
Shared running GMRT2450
See 'Working of trains'
See also 'Working of freight trains'
Train safety systems
– GMRT2185, GERT8019
Trainstops
Maintenance GERT8018
Trainstops (Mechanical)
Requirements GERT8018
Trams
Shared running GMRT2452, GEGN8502
Transition between signalling systems
- GKRT0036, GKGN0626
Tunnels
Lighting GIRT7019
Tyres
Branding GMRT2466

Uncontrolled When Printed

U

None

V

Vehicles – rail
See 'Rail vehicle'
Verification – rail vehicles
Interactions with electrification system GERT8016
Verification – signalling and telecommunications
Interactions with electrification system GERT8016
Vibration
Inside railway vehicles GMGN2460
Tools GMGN2460
Visibility
- GMRT2481, GMRT2483
Driver only operation GMRT2161
Visual Display Terminal
Use of colour GIRT7033

W

Wagons
Crippling and release of RIS-2705-RST
Design & construction – tank GMGN2688
Warning line – 25kV AC electrification
– GMRT2181
Warning signs
See 'Signs & labels'
Warning systems devices
AWS – see 'Automatic warning system (AWS)'
Identification – location of GKRT0009
Wheelsets
Branding GMRT2466
Damage identification GMGN2497
Design GMRT2466, GMRC2494
Design requirements GMGN2685
Engineering policy GMRT2466
Gauging GMGN2497
Geometric interface with track GMRT2466
Handling GMGN2498
In-service attention GMRT2466
Non-destructive testing (NDT) RIS-2701-RST
Off-vehicle repair & overhaul GMRT2466
Policy GMRT2466
Records GMRT2466
Storage GMGN2498
Testing GMRT2466
Transportation GMGN2498
Tread GMGN2497
Windows & windscreens
Optical requirements GMRT2161
Work equipment
See 'Plant & work equipment – use of'
Working of bi-directional lines
See 'Single lines'
Working of freight trains
Conversion chart SLU – Metres - Feet GORT3056-1
Dangerous goods – see 'Dangerous goods'
Defective freight vehicles GORT3056-D
Exceptional loads GORT3407
Exceptional load code words GORT3056-2
Exceptional load RT3973 forms GORT3056-3
Freight train operation - glossary GORT3056
Intermodal traffic GORT3056-J
Loading GOGN3653
Marshalling and composition GORT3056-B
Movement of freight trains GORT3056-E
Principles of safe freight train operation GORT3056-C
Rail tank wagons – use & periodic testing GMGN2688
Safe operations GOGN3653
Special conditions of travel GORT3056-K
See also 'Working of trains'
Working of trains
Colour – use of GIRT7033
Defective on train equipment GORC3537, GORT3437
Drivers – see 'Train driver'
Entering occupied lines GKRT0044
Exceptional loads GORT3407
Interlocking GKRT0060
Light rail vehicles GEGN8502
Overrun protection GERT8018
Rail adhesion – low GERT8040, GEGN8540
Route acceptance of rail vehicles GERT8270
Route availability system GERT8006
Shunters releases GKRT0061
Signalling switch equipment – local control GKRT0061
Speed – see 'Speed'
Speed restrictions – see 'Speed restrictions'
Storage & recommissioning of T&RS GMGN2571
Transition between signalling systems GKRT0036, GKGN0626
See also 'Engineering work'
See also 'Working of freight trains'
Working on infrastructure
Shared running with light rail vehicles GEGN8502
Working on infrastructure or rail vehicles
See also 'Electrified lines'
See also 'Engineering work'
See also 'Track safety'

Members lists

The following can be found within this section:

- List of ISCC Members
- List of Standards Committee Members

A list of Railway Group Members (Licensed Companies) can now be accessed from the Office of Rail Regulation (ORR) website (www.rail-reg.gov.uk) using the following link: **http://www.rail-reg.gov.uk/server/show/nav.276**

INDUSTRY STANDARDS CO-ORDINATION COMMITTEE MEMBERS

The Industry Standards Co-ordination Committee (ISCC) has been established by the RSSB in line with issue three of the Railway Group Standards Code (RGSC). The purpose of the ISCC, as set out in the RGSC is detailed below.

Purpose of ISCC
ISCC will promote the following principles in its approach to decision making and the exercise of its functions:

- A co-ordinated approach to European standards.
- Consistency with Technical Specifications for Interoperability.
- The future of the GB railway (and railway industry) with due regard to safety, performance and efficiency.
- Optimum economic solutions for the whole industry.
- A consistent and co-ordinated GB approach to standards.
- The reduction of risk to passengers, employees and the affected public so far as is reasonably practicable.
- Consideration of the impact on all classes of stakeholders likely to be materially affected.
- Offer advice to RSSB and the relevant committees / groups on the application of relevant scope and decision criteria to ensure so far as possible a consistent approach across all standards.

The members of ISCC are as follows:

Name	Company	Representing
T. Gilbert	Porterbrook	Chair
L. Shaw	ATOC	Passenger Train Operating Companies
T. Shakerley	Freightliner Group Ltd	Freight Train Operating Companies
A. Doherty	Network Rail	Network Rail
J. Ellis	Network Rail	Infrastructure Manager
F. How	RIA	Suppliers and Infrastructure Contractors
L. Gregory	Angel Trains	ROSCOs
J. Taylor	RSSB	RSSB
K. J. Watson	HS1	Co-opted member
I. Jones	DfT	Observer
P. Hooper	ORR	Observer
M. Marks	RSSB	Secretary

Alternates:

G. Leighton	Network Rail	Infrastructure Manager (Alternate for A. Doherty)
N. Ovenden	ATOC	Passenger Train Operating Companies (Alternate for L. Shaw)
P. Antcliff	DB Schenker	Freight Train Operating Companies (Alternate for T. Shakerley)
D. Edge	Eversholt Rail	ROSCOs (Alternate for L.Gregory)
C. Du Plessis	RSSB	Alternate for J. Taylor

For further information regarding the work of ISCC, please contact Marie Marks on 020 3142 5575

STANDARDS COMMITTEE MEMBERS LIST

Control Command and Signalling

Name	Company	Representing
Vacancy		Infrastructure Contractors
David Fox	Balfour Beatty Rail Ltd	Infrastructure Contractors
Andrew Yates	Engineering Support Group	Non-passenger Train Operators
Peter Theobald	ATOC	Passenger Train Operators
Allan Spriggs	Porterbrook	Rolling Stock Owners
Ian Bridges	Parson Brinckerhoff	Suppliers - CONSULTANCY
Andy Stringer		Suppliers - MANUFACTURER
Sam Daw	Thales Rail Signalling Solutions Limited	Suppliers - MANUFACTURER
Pat McFadden	Network Rail	Infrastructure Manager
John Alexander	Network Rail	Infrastructure Manager
John Gardener	Network Rail	Infrastructure Manager (alternate is Colin Mitchell from Network Rail)
David Neil	Grand Central	Co-opted member
Jeff Allan (Chairman)	RSSB	Chair
Farha Sheikh	DfT	Observer
Ian Maxwell	ORR	Observer
Kurt Anderson	TPD Limited	Co-opted Member
Nick Wright	First Group	Co-opted Member
Tom Lee	RSSB	Co-opted Member (Technical Expert)

Energy

Name	Company	Representing
Jack Pendle	VolkeRail Ltd	Infrastructure Contractors (alternate is Gary Crutchley from VolkeRail Ltd)
Keith Warburton	Balfour Beatty Rail Projects	Infrastructure Contractors
Paul Antcliffe	DB Schenker	Non-passenger Train Operators
Nick Hortin	First Scotrail	Passenger Train Operators
Nick Binks	Angel Trains	Rolling Stock Owners
Tom Palfreyman	Parsons Brinckerhoff	Suppliers - CONSULTANCY
Paul Hooper	Atkins Rail	Suppliers - CONSULTANCY
David Hartland	Brecknell, Willis and Company	Suppliers - MANUFACTURER
Richard Stainton	Network Rail	Infrastructure Manager (alternate is Nick Snell/Robert Wilson from Network Rail)
David Knights(Chairman)	RSSB	Chair
Paul Hooper	ORR	Observer
Vacancy		Non-passenger Train Operators
Vacancy		Rolling Stock Owner

Infrastructure

Name	Company	Representing
Bruno Taylor	Amey Rail	Infrastructure Contractors
Richard Thornton	BAM Nuttal Limited	Infrastructure Contractors
Barnaby Temple	Balfour Beatty	Infrastructure Contractors
Paul Antcliffe	DB Schenker	Non-passenger Train Operators (alternate is Gareth Houghton of Colas Rail)
Mike Molyneux	ATOC	Passenger Train Operators (alternate is Chris Stones from LOROL)
John Collins	Angel Trains Ltd	Rolling Stock Owners (alternate is David Bridges from Angel Trains Ltd)
Richard Gibney	Lloyds Register Rail Ltd	Suppliers – CONSULTANCIES (alternate is David Turner from Lloyds Register Rail Ltd
David Benton	TATA Steel	Suppliers – MANUFACTURER (alternate is Rob Carrol from TATA Steel)
Joss Apps	Lloyds Register Rail Ltd	Suppliers – CONSULTANCIES
Nigel Ricketts	Network Rail	Infrastructure Manager (alternate is Rob Anderson from Network Rail)
Andy Jones	Network Rail	Infrastructure Manager (alternate is Colin Newsome from Network Rail)
Bridget Eickhoff (Chairman)	RSSB	Chair (alternate is Paul Gray from RSSB)
Ian Morrice	HMRI	Observer
Tim Kendell	DfT	Observer

Plant

Name	Company	Representing
John Ockenden	Carillion	Infrastructure Contractors (alternate is Ron Wells from Balfour Beatty Rail Plant)
John Watson	Babcock Rail	Infrastructure Contractors
David Elias	Balfour Beatty Rail Plant Ltd	Non-passenger Train Operators (alternate is Ron Wells from Balfour Beatty Rail Plant)
Vacancy		Passenger Train Operators
Jim Nutty	Amey	Rolling Stock Owners (alternate is Graham Cook from Amey)
Haydn Peers	Plasser UK Ltd	Suppliers (alternate is Herbert Pilgerstorfer from Plasser UK Ltd)
David Geering	Harsco Rail Limited	Suppliers
Philip Webb	Komatsu UK Ltd	Suppliers
Fred Allen	Atkins	Suppliers (alternate is Nick Sarosi from Atkins)
Peter Ellis	Network Rail	Infrastructure Manager (alternate is Jim Allenden from Network Rail)
Carl Hunt	Network Rail	Infrastructure Manager (alternate is Ken Mosley from Network Rail)
Mick James (Chairman)	RSSB	Chair
Richard Thomas	ORR	Observer

Rolling Stock

Name	Company	Representing
Haydn Peers	Plasser UK Ltd	Infrastructure Contractors (alternate is David Elias from Balfour Beatty Rail Plant Ltd)
Tim Gabb	DB Schenker	Non-passenger Train Operators (alternate is Robert Morley from Engineering Support Group)
Jim Hailstone	Freightliner Ltd	Non-passenger Train Operators (alternate is Tim Shakerley of Freightliner)
Roy Stockbridge	LOROL	Passenger Train Operators (alternate is Andrew James from Virgin Trains)
Neil Ovenden	ATOC	Passenger Train Operators (alternate is Andrew James from Virgin Trains)
Peter Hubbard	C2C Rail	Passenger Train Operators (alternate is Andrew James from Virgin Trains)
Mark Hicks	Angel Trains	Rolling Stock Owners (alternate is Mick Bishop from Porterbrook Leasing)
Paul Lugg (PWF)	VTG-Rail UK Ltd	Rolling Stock Owners (alternate is Ray Findley from Marcroft Engineering)
Stewart Cameron	Alstom Transport	Suppliers - MANUFACTURER(alternate is Andrew King from Alstom Transport)
Paul Harborough	Interfleet Technology Ltd	Suppliers – COMPONENT SUPPLIER
Richard Moore	Faiveley Transport	Suppliers – COMPONENT SUPPLIER
Chris Shepperd	Siemens	Suppliers - MANUFACTURER
Vacancy		Suppliers – CONSULTANCY
Jim Allenden	Network Rail	Infrastructure Manager (alternate is Martin Elliott from Network Rail)
Cliff Cork (Chairman)	RSSB	Chair
Neil Halliday	RSSB	Observer
Giles Turner	ORR	Observer
Peter Randall	DfT	Observer (alternate is Dermott Carroll from DfT)
Paul Carter	Bombardier	Co-opted Member

Traffic Operation and Management

Name	Company	Representing
Vacancy		Non-passenger Train Operator
Neal Fussey	VolkerRail Group	Infrastructure Contractors
Vacancy		Infrastructure Contractors
Kevin Johnson	Freightliner Ltd	Non-passenger Train Operator
Nick Edwards	DB Schenker	Non-passenger Train Operators
Paul Rushton	East Midlands Trains	Passenger Train Operators
Daniel Mann	ATOC	Passenger Train Operators
Gary Stewart	Northern Rail	Passenger Train Operators
John Collins	Angel Trains Ltd	Rolling Stock Owners
Trevor Dowens	Lloyds Register Rail Ltd	Suppliers
Paul Sutherland	Network Rail	Infrastructure Manager
Tim Leighton	Network Rail	Infrastructure Manager
Chris Hext	Network Rail	Infrastructure Manager
Steve Roberts (Chairman)	RSSB	Chair
Keith Shepherd	ORR	ORR (Observer)
Marz Colombini	ASLEF	Trades Union (Observer)
Paul Clyndes	RMT	Trades Union (Observer)
Simon Vasey	DfT	Observer
David Elias	Balfour Beatty Rail Plant Ltd	Co-opted Member

Uncontrolled When Printed

Forms

Please note deviations and proposals forms are available from the RSSB website (www.rssb.co.uk) or direct from the Standards Management department on 020 3142 5570 or 020 3142 5567.

RAILWAY GROUP STANDARDS DOCUMENT ORDER FORM

Ordered By / Invoice Address:

Name _____

Job Title _____

Company Name _____

Address _____

_____

Telephone No _____

Credit Card No _____ Exp Date _____

Delivery Address (if different):

Name _____

Job Title _____

Company Name _____

Address _____

_____

Telephone No _____

Document Order Details

Purchase Order Number / Reference Number _____

Document Number	Document Title	Issue No.	Quantity	Cost	Total
				£	£
				£	£
				£	£
				GRAND TOTAL	£.....

Signed .....

Name .....Date .....

Fax to Willsons Printers (Newark) Limited

External: 01636 701396